NOMINALIZATION AND PREDICATION IN UT-MA'IN

by

REBECCA DOW SMITH PATERSON

A DISSERTATION

Presented to the Department of Linguistics and the Graduate School of the University of Oregon in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

September 2019
Student: Rebecca Dow Smith Paterson

Title: Nominalization and Predication in Ut-Ma'in

This dissertation has been accepted and approved in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the Doctor of Philosophy degree in the Department of Linguistics by:

Doris L. Payne Chairperson
Spike Gildea Core Member
Don Daniels Core Member
Senyo Ofori-Parku Institutional Representative

and

Janet Woodruff-Borden Vice Provost and Dean of the Graduate School

Original approval signatures are on file with the University of Oregon Graduate School.

Degree awarded September 2019
U'at-Main is a Kainji, East Benue-Congo language, spoken in northwestern Nigeria (ISO 639-3 code [gel]). This study contributes to our understanding of Benue-Congo languages by offering the first indepth look at nominalization phenomena in any Kainji language. Kainji is an undescribed 50+ language subgroup of Benue-Congo; current descriptions are limited to articles and dissertations on a few languages, unpublished wordlists, and unpublished grammar sketches. This study looks at the morphosyntax of predication in U'at-Main, especially the extensive use of nominalization and NP agreement phenomena within a wide range of predicative functions. Five of fourteen noun class prefixes are involved in nominalization of the verb; a nominalized verb, along with a goal complement or an object, can be incorporated into the nominalized phrase in the same way that a noun modifier is marked within a NP. These nominalized verb phrases are extensively used in auxiliary constructions that cover a diverse range of tense, aspect, and mode designations; the syntactic transitivity of the clause determines the morphosyntax used. Intransitive auxiliary constructions use the full range of nominalizing noun class marking; in contrast, transitive auxiliary constructions show a shift in their use of the noun class agreement morphology.
required. The progressive auxiliary construction specifically has shown the most adjustment in the system.

The Īt-Ma'in associative morpheme is in widespread use across different syntactic constructions. The associative can create a modifying phrase from a descriptive noun with a wide range of semantic relationship between the two nouns. The associative also serves as the relative pronoun introducing a descriptive relative clause. The associative can mark a goal or an object that is contained within the nominalized verb phrase. When a nominalized verb phrase is the complement to an auxiliary construction, the associative marks only the object complement of the verb. Finally, the associative marks the nominative form of nouns in certain morphosyntactic environments; this results in a so-called marked-nominative word form and clause alignment pattern. These diverse uses of the associative and the accompanying agreement marking are pervasive in Īt-Ma'in and are a major focus of this study.
CURRICULUM VITAE

NAME OF AUTHOR: Rebecca Dow Smith Paterson

GRADUATE AND UNDERGRADUATE SCHOOLS ATTENDED:

University of Oregon, Eugene
University of North Dakota, Grand Forks
Cairn University, Langhorne, Pennsylvania

DEGREES AWARDED:

Doctor of Philosophy, Linguistics, 2019, University of Oregon
Master of Arts, Linguistics, 2007, University of North Dakota
Bachelor of Science, 2001, Cairn University

AREAS OF SPECIAL INTEREST:

Language description and documentation
Morphosyntax
Diachronic syntax
Discourse grammar
African languages

PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE:

Instructor, University of Oregon, 2013-2015, 2017-2018
American English Institute

Instructor, University of Oregon, Winter 2013
Department of Linguistics
Teaching Assistant, University of Oregon, Fall 2012, 2016, 2019
   Department of Linguistics and American English Institute

Instructor, University of North Dakota
   Summer Institute of Linguistics, Summers 2009-2010

Visiting Instructor, Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand, Fall 2007

Teaching Assistant, University of North Dakota

GRANTS, AWARDS, AND HONORS:

Graduate Teaching Fellowship, Department of Linguistics and American English
   Institute, University of Oregon, 2012-2019

Fellowship in the Collection of Oral Literature and Traditional Ecological
   Knowledge, Documenting Oral Literature of the Ut-Ma'in Language, Firebird
   Foundation for Anthropological Research, 2016

Research grant, Her voice: Documenting the language of women speakers of the
   Ut-Ma'in language (Nigeria), Center for the Study of Women in Society,
   University of Oregon, 2016

Travel grant, Department of Linguistics, University of Oregon, for presenting at
   the 4th International Conference on Language Documentation & Conservation,
   University of Hawai‘i, 2015

Jacqueline Schachter Outstanding Conference Presentation Award,
   Department of Linguistics, University of Oregon, 2014

Travel grant, American English Institute, University of Oregon, for presenting at
   the 45th Annual Conference on African Linguistics, University of Kansas,
   Lawrence, Kansas, 2014
Travel grant, Department of Linguistics, University of Oregon, for presenting at the 46th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, Split University, Croatia, 2013

MA Scholarship, Department of Linguistics, University of North Dakota, 2007

General Scholarship, Department of Linguistics, University of North Dakota, 2001-2005

PUBLICATIONS:


ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

With sincere appreciation, I thank the many Ut-Ma'in speakers who taught me so much more than their language, especially Sunday John and his family, Ibrahim Tume Ushe, Ibrahim Yohanna, and Daniel Yohanna. Um nong ut-vam sok! Many others contributed to my knowledge and my well-being while in their community, and although I do not here name them all I am grateful for the warm welcome I have received over the years. I would also like to thank other local contacts for their care of me and my family while in the language area, specifically Mande Hakumi, Luka Kwako, and Samuel Danture language and his family. I thank David and Carleen Heath who introduced me to the area and the beautiful complexities of the Ut-Ma'in language, and who made their home available for field site visits.

I wish to thank my advisor Professor Doris L Payne for her constant encouragement, for believing in me, challenging my thinking, helping hone my ideas, refining my writing, and caring for my well-being and my family. I thank my committee members, Spike Gildea, Don Daniels, and Senyo Ofori-Parku for their helpful insight throughout the research leading to this work and for detailed attention to the final draft.

I would like to thank SIL International, specifically SIL Nigeria for supporting this research. Funding in part of the fieldwork for this study was provided by the Center for the Study of Women in Society at the University of Oregon (2016) and the Firebird Foundation for Anthropological Research (2016).

Many friends and family near and far have been a part of this journey. To you I am grateful: to Sara Pacchiarotti for reading countless early drafts of everything, constant encouragement, sustaining prayers, and enduring friendship; to Shahar Shirtz for
considering me a colleague when I only felt completely out of my depth from the very start of my doctoral studies; to Marie-Caroline Pons, Manuel Otero, Richard Griscom, Zoe Tribur, Allison Taylor-Adams, Amos Teo, and Matt Stave for the pep talks, critical insight on analysis, inspirational quotes, coffee runs, and friendship; to Mokaya Bosire for encouragement and insight on the value of sharing about Ut-Ma'in and the potential impact this new knowledge could have more broadly in Niger-Congo studies; to Coleen Starwalt for mentorship and guidance; to Stuart McGill and Roger Blench for championing research on Kainji languages; to Katy Barnwell for first introducing me to Nigeria; to Diana Weber for first mentioning to me the idea of doctoral studies; to Eugene friends and friends far away.

My life is not complete without the love of my family: to my parents, thank you for your constant love and support. And finally, my most heart-felt thanks to my husband, Hugh Paterson and my daughter Katja. My loves, thank you.
To my dear cousin and brother Charles Andrew Morris

who with grace and patience,

daily fights the good fight and ALS,

whose endurance through trials is testimony to a life well-lived

and an example to us all,

    joyful in hope,

    patent in affliction,

    faithful in prayer.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER I: INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 The Ù-t-Ma'in language and its speakers</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Varieties of Ù-t-Ma'in</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Ù-t-Ma'in genetic classification</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Data used for this study</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER II: Ù-T-MA’IN SOUND SYSTEM AND CONVENTIONS</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Contrastive tones</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Syllable</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Vowels</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Consonants</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1 Bilabial consonants</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.2 Labiodental consonants</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.3 Alveolar consonants</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.4 (Alveo)palatal consonants</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.5 Velar consonants</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.6 Glottal consonants</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.7 Consonant sequences in coda position</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.7.1 /ks/ and /kt/ in coda position</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.7.2 Homorganic nasal plus stop in coda position</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.7.3 /st/ in coda position</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.</td>
<td>Verb suffixes ................................................................. 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.1</td>
<td>Bare verb form ................................................................. 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.2</td>
<td>Past and Perfect verb forms ............................................. 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.3</td>
<td>Distal suffix ...................................................................... 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.4</td>
<td>Enclitics ............................................................................. 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2</td>
<td>(Nascent) argument indexation ........................................ 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3</td>
<td>Action Nominals ................................................................ 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Other word categories exhibiting noun-like structures and behaviors .... 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1</td>
<td>Numerals ............................................................................. 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2</td>
<td>Quantifiers ......................................................................... 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3</td>
<td>Nominal clausal modifiers .................................................. 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Pronouns, determiners and demonstratives ............................. 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Introduction ...................................................................... 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Form of the ASSOCCXN ...................................................... 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Function of ASSOCCXNs ..................................................... 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>ASSOCCXNs with action nominal as head .............................. 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>ASSOCCXNs in transitive auxiliary constructions .................. 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Basic clause constructions ................................................. 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Focus Constructions .......................................................... 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Argument alignment patterns .............................................. 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1</td>
<td>Neutral alignment of modified NPs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.2</td>
<td>Nominative/Accusative alignment: unmodified NPs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3</td>
<td>Nominative/Accusative alignment: 1SG personal pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4</td>
<td>Neutral alignment: personal pronouns (not 1SG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.5</td>
<td>Nominative/Accusative alignment: CLASS MARKED pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.6</td>
<td>Object alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Negative Basic Clause Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Impersonal Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.1</td>
<td>Passive-like impersonal construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.2</td>
<td>Presentational Impersonal Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Juxtaposed NP Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Copular Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1</td>
<td>Nominal Predicate Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.1</td>
<td>Identification function of the Predicate Nominal Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.2</td>
<td>Attributive function of the NP Predicate Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.3</td>
<td>Locative NP Predicate Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.1.4</td>
<td>Quantifier NP Predicate Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2</td>
<td>Other nonverbal predicate constructions with copula ɔ́</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.1</td>
<td>Numeral predicate construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.2</td>
<td>Predicate Adjective Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.3</td>
<td>Prepositional locative predication construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.2.4</td>
<td>Similative predicate construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.3</td>
<td>Negative Copular Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4</td>
<td>Possessive Predication Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4.1</td>
<td>Affirmative Possessive Predication Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.4.2</td>
<td>Past and Negative Possessive Predication Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5</td>
<td>Existential Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5.1</td>
<td>Affirmative Existential Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2.5.2</td>
<td>Negative Existential Constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Chapter summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Introduction to multi-verb constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Identifying auxiliary verbs in Ut-Ma'in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Type I: Basic Auxiliary Constructions - progressive and future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1</td>
<td>Affirmative progressive auxiliary constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.1</td>
<td>Intransitive progressive construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.1.1</td>
<td>Variation among class prefixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.1.2</td>
<td>Loss of prefix on nominalized verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.2</td>
<td>Transitive progressive construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.2.1</td>
<td>Changes in agreement marking of the ASSOCXN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.2.2</td>
<td>Limitation on the ASSOCXN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.3</td>
<td>Ditransitive progressive auxiliary construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1.4</td>
<td>Summary of progressive auxiliary constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2</td>
<td>Affirmative future constructions .................................................... 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3</td>
<td>Type I Negative Auxiliary Constructions ........................................... 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Type II Auxiliaries: Progressive + Lexeme Constructions ...................... 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.1</td>
<td>‘in midst of’ auxiliary construction................................................ 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2</td>
<td>Immediate future ‘about to’ auxiliary construction ......................... 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Chapter summary.................................................................................... 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER VIII: ‘WANT’ PREDICATIONS ........................................................ 180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Introduction............................................................................................. 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>NP ‘WANT’-complement.............................................................................. 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Nominalized same subject ‘WANT’-complement clauses............................ 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Finite clause complements of ‘want’ ................................................... 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>Negation of ‘want’ predication constructions ....................................... 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER IX: TYPE III: LEXICAL AUXILIARY CONSTRUCTIONS ............ 187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Future obligation auxiliary construction ............................................. 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>Habitual auxiliary construction .......................................................... 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Telic auxiliary construction .................................................................. 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>Continuative auxiliary constructions................................................... 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4.1</td>
<td>GO_AUX continuative construction.......................................................... 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4.2</td>
<td>PREPARE_AUX continuative construction............................................... 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4.3</td>
<td>EAT_AUX continuative construction....................................................... 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Inchoative constructions....................................................................... 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5.1</td>
<td>START_AUX inchoative construction...................................................... 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.5.3</td>
<td>Discourse function of unmodified noun subjects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>Chapter summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XII: THEMES IN DISCOVERY</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX A: LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX B: LANGUAGE DATA, VARIETIES AND CONSULTANTS</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX C: SAMPLE TEXT A - MUSA AND AUDU</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to text: Musa and Audu</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographic transcription: Musa and Audu</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation: Musa and Audu</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlinearized text: Musa and Audu</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX D: SAMPLE TEXT B - KAMBARI MAN</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to text: Kambari Man</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographic transcription: Kambari Man</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation: Kambari Man</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlinearized text: Kambari Man</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX E: SAMPLE TEXT C - YOUNG MAN</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to text: Young Man</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographic transcription: Young Man</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation: Young Man</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlinearized text: Young Man</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX F: CATALOGUE OF ASSOC CXNS: FORM AND FUNCTION</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES CITED</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# LIST OF FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1: Map of Kainji language clusters (McGill and Blench 2012: 91)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2: Classification of Kainji languages within Benue-Congo</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3: Blench’s (2018: 72) proposal Northwest Kainji</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4: Kainji subgroups (McGill and Blench 2012: 95)</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5: Ût-Ma'in syllable</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6: Ût-Ma'in phonemic/contrastive vowels</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7: Distribution of Ût-Ma'in vowels in Smith (2007) wordlist</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 8: Ût-Ma'in phonemic consonant inventory</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 9: Ût-Ma'in major word categories</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 10: Ût-Ma'in major word categories and other construction (CXN) types</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 11: Morphosyntactic coding of Ût-Ma'in word categories</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 12: Prefixal and suffixal class forms (C/AG) in NPs</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 13: Order of elements within the NP</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 14: Attested verb suffix co-occurrences in Ût-Ma'in</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 16: ASSOCCXN with noun head</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 17: ASSOCCXNS with N_HEAD vs. V_NMLZ,HEAD as head</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 18: ASSOCC forms attested with Action nominals</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 19: Alignment Patterns in Ût Ma’in</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 20: Object alignment</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 21: Schematic of nonverbal macro-constructions</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 22: Functions of the Predicate Nominal Construction</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 23: Schematic of a Focused Predicate Nominal Construction</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 24: Other constructions with copula ɔ́</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 25: Schematic of Possessive Predicate Constructions</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 26: Schematic of Existential Predicate Constructions</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 27: ɬt-Ma'in nonverbal predicates and copula use</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 28: Multi-verb constructions in contrast to basic verb constructions</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 29: Comparison of basic verbal predication to Type I basic auxiliary</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 30: Morphosyntax of Progressive Auxiliary Constructions</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 31: Schematic of the intransitive progressive source elements</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 32: Summary of the Progressive Constructions in ɬt-Ma'in</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 33: Possible pathway of development for the FUT and FUT.OBL</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 34: ɬɔm ‘DO’ predication constructions in ɬt-Ma'in</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 35: Functions covered by NOM and ACC word forms in ɬt-Ma'in</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 36: Pathway from NP with relative clause to main clause</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 36: Pathway from relative pronoun to subject marker</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table 1: Autonyms of Ṣt-Ma'in speaking groups</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 2: Terms for language varieties and people</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3: Minimal tone triplets for noun stems /bah/</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4: Minimal tone triplets for noun stems /gah/</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5: Ṣt-Ma'in vowel contrasts</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6: Ṣt-Ma'in long vowels in contrast to short vowels</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7: Distribution of /nt/ consonant cluster</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 8: Distribution of /Nk/ as consonant clusters</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9: Distribution of /st/ consonant clusters as codas</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 10: Distribution of /w/</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 11: Distribution of /j/ as syllable onset</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 12: Geminate consonants in noun class 4 citation forms</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 13: Geminate [l:] in noun class 5</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 14: Duration measurements of [l:] and [r]</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 15: Geminate consonants in noun class 6 citation forms</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 16: Geminate [m:] in noun class 6B</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 17: Ṣt-Ma'in Phones and Ṣt-Ma'in orthographic symbols</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 18: Noun class morphological system (Smith 2007: 100; Blench 2018:76)</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 19: Semantic tendencies in Ṣt-Ma'in noun classes and noun class pairings</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 20: Tense-aspect paradigm of the verb ‘eat’</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 21: Forms of the verb ‘descend’ ................................................................. 66
Table 22: Additional forms of ‘eat’ ................................................................. 70
Table 23: Noun class forms for ʿUt-Ma'in Action Nominals ......................... 72
Table 24: Pronoun paradigm ................................................................. 78
Table 25: Class marked Demonstratives ........................................................ 80
Table 26: Attested forms of the ASSOCC ...................................................... 87
Table 27: Semantic relationship in ASSOCCXNS .............................................. 90
Table 28: ASSOCC forms expected with nominalized verb head ...................... 92
Table 29: Forms of the ʿUt-Ma'in copula ...................................................... 116
Table 30: ʿUt-Ma'in non-verbal predicate constructions .................................. 117
Table 31: Type I auxiliaries ........................................................................ 147
Table 32: Comparison of verb forms in progressive constructions .................. 160
Table 33: ASSOCC forms of the transitive progressive construction ............... 163
Table 34: Transitive progressive constructions and intransitive counterparts ...... 165
Table 35: Changes in agreement marking in the ʿUt-Ma'in transitive progressive. 166
Table 36: Function, forms and likely sources of Type III ʿUt-Ma'in auxiliaries .... 189
Table 37: Comparison of ‘DO’ and PROG ditransitive constructions ............... 212
Table 38: Citation forms of ʿUt-Ma'in nouns by noun class ............................ 222
Table 39: Relative pronoun forms and relative clause examples .................... 229
CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

Ut-Ma'in is a Kainji, East Benue-Congo language spoken in northwestern Nigeria (ISO 639-3 code [gel]). This study looks at the morphosyntax of predication in Ut-Ma'in, especially the extensive use of nominalization and noun phrase agreement phenomena within predication. Five of fourteen Ut-Ma'in noun class prefixes are involved in nominalization of the verb; a nominalized verb phrase, along with a goal complement or an object, can be incorporated into the nominalized phrase in the same way that a noun modifier is marked within a noun phrase. These nominalized verb phrases are extensively used in auxiliary constructions that cover a diverse range of tense, aspect and mode designations. The morphological marking of the nominalized verb phrase within an auxiliary construction is determined by the syntactic transitivity of the clause. Intransitive auxiliary constructions use the full range of nominalizing noun class marking; in contrast, transitive auxiliary constructions show a shift for the nominalized verb phrase in their use of the noun class agreement morphology required. The progressive auxiliary construction specifically has shown the most adjustment in the system.

The Ut-Ma'in associative morpheme is in widespread use across different syntactic constructions. Within the noun phrase, the associative can create a modifying phrase from a descriptive noun and allows a wide range of semantic relationships to hold between modifying and head nouns (Chapters III through IV). Within the noun phrase, the associative also serves as the relative pronoun introducing a descriptive relative
clause (Chapter XI). Within a nominalized verb phrase, the associative can mark a goal or an object that is contained within the nominalized verb phrase (Chapter IV). When a nominalized verb phrase is the complement to an auxiliary construction, the associative marks only the object complement of the verb (Chapter VII and 9). Finally, the Ut-Ma'in associative marks the nominative form of nouns in certain morphosyntactic environments; this results in a so-called marked-nominative case marking (Chapter XI). These diverse uses of the associative and the accompanying agreement marking are pervasive in Ut-Ma'in and are a major focus of this study.

Chapter I includes a sociolinguistic profile of the Ut-Ma'in speaking people, explanation of the data used herein, discussion of Ut-Ma'in’s genetic affiliation within Benue-Congo, and a review of previous literature on Ut-Ma'in. Chapter II contains a brief overview of the sound system and transcription conventions used in this study. Understanding the morphosyntax of predication in Ut-Ma'in requires an understanding of word classes, nominal morphology, noun class morphology, noun phrase structure, nominalization processes, basic clause structure, and negation patterns. These topics are covered in Chapters III-V. Remaining chapters describe nonverbal predication (Chapter VI), four distinct types of multi-verb constructions (Chapters VII-X), and relative clause constructions (Chapter XI). Appendices present a list of abbreviations used in this study (Appendix A) and an inventory of the data used for this study (Appendix B). Appendices C through E each contain a sample annotated text. Each includes an introduction to the context and content of the text. The text is then presented in three versions: an orthographic transcription, an English translation, and a marked up interlinearized text. Each interlinearized text is labeled for grammatical constructions
with reference to the part of this study where the construction is described in detail. In this way the texts serve as additional evidence for the grammatical phenomena presented in the study, but also show the discourse context for the occurrences of many other grammatical forms.

1.1 The _UT-Ma'in language and its speakers

_UT-Ma'in is a language of northwestern Nigeria. Most speakers live near the border of Kebbi State and Niger State in Fakai Local Government Area; the land area is reported to be approximately 2,247 square kilometers (Nigeria Population Commission 2006). The northern language area border is the Ka River. The oldest towns are located at the top of the hills, many along the ridge that runs from the towns of Rijau to Zuru. The principal town of _UT-Ma'in speakers is Mahuta, located on the road that runs from Dabai, near the town of Zuru, to the town of Koko on the main road to the Kebbi State capital Birnin Kebbi. The United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs (2017) present a projected 2016 population of Fakai Local Government Area as 161,365, an increase of more than 40,000 relative to the 2006 census population that reported a population of approximately 120,000 (Nigeria Population Commission 2006).

Most _UT-Ma’in speakers are farmers of millet, guinea corn (sorghum), and dry-farmed rice. There is a relatively low population density in this agricultural community, 71.8 people per square kilometer.

_UT-Ma’in speakers comprise a minority group among minority language groups in the area. The _UT-Ma’in language area is bordered by Hausa ([hau], Chadic, Afroasiatic) spoken to the north and west, by C’Lela [dri] and Gwamhi-Wuri-Mba [bga] spoken to
the northeast and east, by Ūt-Hun [uth] to the south, and Ūs-Saare [uss] to the southeast.¹ With the exception of Hausa, all other neighboring languages belong to the Northwest Kainji Cluster, Benue-Congo, language family.

Most native speakers of all Northwest Kainji languages are bilingual in Hausa. Hausa is used between speakers who do not share a common first language. For example, an Ūt-Ma’in speaker and a C’Lela speaker interacting in a market setting would likely use Hausa to communicate.

Figure 1 shows the rough geographic location of the Kainji sub-families within Nigeria (McGill and Blench 2012: 91). Ūt-Ma’in, Ūt-Hun, Ūs-Saare, C’Lela and Gwamhi-Wuri-Mba are located within the pink oval labeled Northwest Kainji.

Despite the tendency for bilingual speakers to shift to the language of wider communication, McGill and Blench (2012) report that threats of language shift are more restrained by a strong sense of ethnic identity through language use among speakers of West Kainji languages in Kebbi State, than among speakers of the east Kainji languages of Plateau State, where considerable shift to Hausa threatens the East Kainji languages (represented by the green oval labeled East Kainji in Figure 1). McGill and Blench (2012:109-112) attribute the differences to a strong sense of ethnic identity among the West Kainji language communities in response to generations of oppression by

¹ Ūt-Hun [uth] and Ūs-Saare [uss] are newly adopted labels (January 2019) within the ISO 639-3. They were previously considered two dialects of one language, Hun-Saare, and Hun-Saare was formerly labelled within the ISO 639-3 [dud]. Studies previous to 2019 refer to Ūt-Hun [uth] and Ūs-Saare [uss] as Hun-Saare [dud], Dukanci (Hausa label for the language), or sometimes Dukawa (Hausa label for the people). The record of name change request is available at: https://iso639-3.sil.org/request/2018-014.
Hausa-speaking peoples. As a result, ethnic identity, of which language is an integral part, supersedes any other identity factor among most West Kainji groups. This is true for Ut-Ma'in speakers also. Children are still learning the West Kainji languages, and language itself is seen as a marker of ethnic identity.

\[\textit{Oppression by Hausa-speaking peoples goes at least as far back as the slave-raiding connected to the establishment of the Kontagora Emirate under Umaru Nagwamatse (b.1806-d.1876), grandson of the prominent 19th century Usman dan Fodio who founded the Sokoto caliphate c. 1804 (Hogben and Kirk-Greene 1966: 500).}\]
Town dwellers, particularly those with parents from two ethnic groups, learn little of their father’s language. Út-Ma'in speaking men commonly marry outside of their ethnic group, often to Lelna women (i.e., C’Lela speakers). Mothers use their first language with children in the home, but fathers tend to use Hausa or English with their children when the mother is from another ethnic group. Hausa is crucial for life in the multi-ethnic town settlements along the main roads. Hausa traders have been in these towns for decades, if not centuries.

1.2 Varieties of Út-Ma'in

Út-Ma'in is a cover term for seven mutually intelligible language varieties and is not in widespread use; however, it is commonly used by my language consultants when they interact with other speakers from their communities. The name Út-Ma'in was proposed in c. 2000 at a gathering of representative speakers from all seven varieties who were meeting to discuss the development of a writing system (cf. Heath et al. 2004). Út-Ma'in roughly translates as ‘our (incl.) language’, as in example (1). The term ur-ma'in [ɘ̄r.māʔin], as in (2), preceded this term and is used by all varieties as a label for the ‘culture’ shared by speakers of the mutually intelligible language varieties. The root mā is used in the autonyms of language names of at least three of the varieties: Út-Ma'Ror, Út-Ma'Jiir, and Út-Ma'Ku'ur. The cover term Út-Ma'in takes the base of Út-Ma and replaces the clan name with the first person plural inclusive possessive pronoun īn ‘1PL.INCL.POSS’. However, the meaning of the root mā has been called “untranslatable” by my consultants when it does not have an accompanying noun class marker.
Each Ut-Ma'in variety has a distinct name for both the language variety and the speakers of that variety. These names were first reported by Regnier (2003: 2) based on a language survey and wordlist collection in the Ut-Ma'in area. Regnier included “Koor” and “Ker” as separate groups. Recent interviews conducted by Ibrahim Tume Ushe, a native speaker of Ut-Ma'in (p.c., August 2017) have revealed that these are two names used for the same variety which is the northernmost of the Ut-Ma'in speaking groups. Ut-Ma'in autonyms as reported by Regnier (2003) and Tume (p.c.) are given in Table 1; groups are listed in alphabetical order based on the autonym root of the language variety name, i.e. the capitalized portion following the hyphen of each name in column one. The autonym (Tume p.c., from column 3 of Table 1) or the autonym root is used with each example used throughout the study.
Table 1: Autonyms of Út-Ma'in speaking groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>æs-Fer</td>
<td>øt-Fer</td>
<td>Út-Fer</td>
<td>Us-Fer</td>
<td>*Kukum, Sakaba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kag-ne</td>
<td>øt-Kag</td>
<td>Út-Kag</td>
<td>Kag-nê</td>
<td>*Fakai, Mahuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-Koor, Kar-ni</td>
<td>øtma-Koor</td>
<td>Út-Ma'Kuur</td>
<td>Kuur-nê</td>
<td>*Kele, †Old Kele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiir</td>
<td>øt-Jiir</td>
<td>Út-Ma'Jiir</td>
<td>Jiir-nê</td>
<td>Bokoh, Bajida, †*Gele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-Ror</td>
<td>øtma-Ror</td>
<td>Út-Ma'Ror</td>
<td>A'Ror</td>
<td>*Mahuta, Birnin Tudu, Matseri, Tungan Dutsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æs-Us</td>
<td>øt-Us</td>
<td>Ús-Us</td>
<td>A'us-Us</td>
<td>*†Rafin Kanya, now scattered among other groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-Zuksun</td>
<td>øt-Zuksun</td>
<td>Út-Zuksun</td>
<td>A'Zuksun</td>
<td>*Tungan Kuka</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*indicates the traditional center of the group
†indicates a traditional center used only for festivals

Varied names used for the different varieties of Út-Ma'in aside, there has been a history of using other languages’ names for these Út-Ma'in speaking groups. Early reports by anthropologists often gave C’Lela and Hausa names for the Út-Ma'in speaking groups (Temple 1922; Harris 1938). Table 2 is a comprehensive overview of the Út-Ma'in autonyms for the names of languages, names for people, and names for one person. Also included are the Út-Ma'in names for neighboring ethnic/language groups, including name of language, name for people, and name for one person. Cells containing all of these Út-Ma'in terms are shaded. In the final three columns are parallel terms from the C’Lela language and the Hausa language. Many of these are the names for the Út-Ma'in varieties that have been used in anthropological and linguistic literature prior to c.2000.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO 639-3 code for language varieties</th>
<th>Ut-Ma'in term</th>
<th>Culture</th>
<th>Language variety</th>
<th>People</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Parallel C’Lela term</th>
<th>Parallel Hausa term</th>
<th>Language variety</th>
<th>People</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gel</td>
<td>Ut-Ma'in</td>
<td>Ut-Ma'in</td>
<td>A'in beêt/ A'it beêt</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Fakkanci</td>
<td>Fakkawa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut Ma'Ror</td>
<td>Ut Ma'Ror</td>
<td>A'Ror</td>
<td>Wa-u-Ror</td>
<td>Pək-nu*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut-Kag</td>
<td>Kag-ne*</td>
<td>Wa-u-Kag</td>
<td>əd-Gwan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Us-Us</td>
<td>Us-Us</td>
<td>Wa-u-Us</td>
<td>Pək-nu*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut Ma'Jiir</td>
<td>Jiir</td>
<td>Wa-u-Jiir</td>
<td>Geeri-ni*</td>
<td>Gelanci</td>
<td>Gelawa*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut-Zuksun</td>
<td>A'Zuksun</td>
<td>Wa-u-Zuksun</td>
<td>Wipsi-ni*</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Zussun/Zusu*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut-Fer</td>
<td>Us-Fer</td>
<td>Wa-u-Fer</td>
<td>Wipsi-ni*</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Kukumawa*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ut-Ma'Kuur</td>
<td>Kər-ni*</td>
<td>Wa-u-Kuur</td>
<td>Keri-ni*</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Kelawa*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northwest Kаниj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dri</td>
<td>Ut-Reer</td>
<td>Reer-nə</td>
<td>Wa-u-Reer</td>
<td>Lélna</td>
<td>Dakkakanci</td>
<td>Dakkarkanci</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uth (f.k.a. dud)</td>
<td>Ut-ma'Hun</td>
<td>Ut-Hun</td>
<td>Wa-u-Hun</td>
<td>Rognə</td>
<td>Dukanci</td>
<td>Dukawa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uss (f.k.a. dud)</td>
<td>Us-Saare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bga</td>
<td>Ut-ma'Gwamhi</td>
<td>Ut-Gwamhi</td>
<td>Wa-u-Gwamhi</td>
<td>Lyase-nə</td>
<td>Banganci</td>
<td>Bangawa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dam</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bx, asg, awc, kdl, tsw, tvd‡</td>
<td>Ut-ma'Baar</td>
<td>Rem-du ut-Baar</td>
<td>Baar-nə</td>
<td>Wa-u-Baar</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hau</td>
<td>Ut-ma'Kwundi</td>
<td>Ut-Kwundi</td>
<td>Kwündi-nə</td>
<td>Wa-u-Kwundi</td>
<td>Kognə</td>
<td>Hausa</td>
<td>Hausawa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Indicates a label reported by Regnier (2003).
‡This list includes languages that generally fall under the label Kambari.
-Names are written using the Ut-Ma'in orthography. Correspondences between orthographic symbols and IPA symbols are given in §2.8.
-Shaded cells contain Ut-Ma'in language names; the final three columns contain names in the C’Lela and Hausa languages.
1.3  Ᾱt-Ma'in genetic classification

åde Ma'in has been most recently classified as Kainji, Central-Nigerian, East Benue-Congo, Benue-Congo, Niger-Congo language (Blench 2018:66); see Figure 2 where Kainji is underlined (Watters 2018: 5); see also Gerhardt (1989). Numbers in parentheses after language grouping labels in Figure 2 indicate number of languages, putting the current count of Kainji languages at fifty-nine. All seven Ᾱt-Ma'in varieties are counted here as one, i.e., one of the 59 Kainji languages.

Figure 2: Classification of Kainji languages within Benue-Congo (Watters 2018: 5)

Benue-Congo (976)
  West Benue-Congo (83)
  East Benue-Congo (893)
    Central-Nigerian (133)
      Kainji (59)
      Plateau (54)
      Jukunoid (20)
    Bantoid-Cross (760)
      Cross-River (68)
      Bantoid (692)
        Wider Bantoid (152)
      Bantu (540)

Within Kainji, Ᾱt-Ma'in is classified as part of the Northwest cluster (Blench 2018: 6). The most closely related languages are C’Lela [dri]³, Gwamhi-Wuri-Mba [bga],

³ Abbreviations within [square brackets] following language names are the ISO 639-3 codes to help identify the languages.
Ut-Hun [uth], and Us-Saare [uss]. Blench’s proposed organization of the Northwest Kainji languages is presented in Figure 3; it also includes the now moribund language Damakawa, whose ethnic population have now shifted to speaking C’Lela (McGill 2008; McGill and Blench 2012: 103). Blench’s organization of Northwest Kainji is tentative as the placement of Damakawa has shifted between his 2012 and 2018 proposals; this is indicated by the (?) in Figure 3.

Figure 3: Blench’s (2018: 72) proposal Northwest Kainji

The larger picture into which the Northwest Kainji languages fit is displayed in Figure 4. This entire subclassification of Kainji is based primarily on data from a comparative wordlist, as very few published studies of Kainji languages exist. For a state-of-the-art list of documentation and descriptive materials on Kainji languages, see McGill and Blench (2012: 98-101).

---

4 Until recently, the Ut-Hun and Us-Saare languages were considered one under the label Hun-Saare [dud], also known by the Hausa name Dukanci.
1.4 Data used for this study

Data used for this study were collected between 2005 and 2017. I conducted approximately 12 months of fieldwork. From 2005-2007, the primary focus was on the Ror variety; some Fer and Jiir texts were also recorded during this time. In these early years I was based in Jos, Plateau State, Nigeria and made several trips to the Ût-Ma’în
language area. Ibrahim Tume Ushe, Sunday John, and Serah Sunday also traveled to Jos to assist with recordings, translations, and analysis of previously recorded texts. In 2013, two months of fieldwork resulted in the collection of nine “Pear Story” retellings (Chafe 1980) - seven from the Ror variety (three female speakers and four male speakers), one of the Kuur variety (male speaker), one from the Jiir variety (male speaker); and additional wordlists from all nine speakers. In January 2017, a short visit to the language area afforded some translations of previously recorded materials. In February 2017, Tabita Ibrahim and Victoria Yohanna travelled to Jos to assist with translation and analysis of previously recorded texts. From July-September 2017, four months of fieldwork were sponsored by the Firebird Foundation for Anthropological Research and the Center for the Study of Women in Society (of the University of Oregon). Data was collected on all seven varieties in-situ with many visits to the language centers, mostly facilitated by native-speaker consultants Ibrahim Tume Ushe and Sunday John.

Approximately seven and a half hours of recorded and translated data were available for this study. The primary recordings of language data and Ût-Ma'in texts used for this study are listed in Appendix B. I use the term “text” to refer to both the originally written and originally audio-recorded data listed below. All recorded data has a recording length listed in the final column. Five sample analyzed texts are included in additional appendices.
Genres include:

i. folk narratives

ii. narratives about personal experiences

iii. songs

iv. word games

v. retellings of observed events - particularly after watching the silent film developed by Chafe (Chafe 1980), known as the Pear Story.

vi. read texts

vii. crafted texts - these include translated materials and adult literacy educational materials

viii. dialogues - often interview style with all participants speaking in ʿUt-Maʿin. These were facilitated by consultant, Ibrahim Tume Ushe. Many were recorded on his own initiative.
CHAPTER II

UT-MA'IN SOUND SYSTEM AND
TRANSCRIPTION CONVENTIONS

2.1 Introduction

In this chapter I present an introduction to the sound system of Ut-Ma'in based primarily on the Ut-Ma'Ror variety. Data presented without explicit brackets is in the phonemic representation used throughout the paper (cf. §2.8). Square brackets indicate a phonetic representation. In some cases I mark morpheme boundaries with hyphens within phonetic brackets. Forward slashes indicate phonemic representation.

Contrastive tones are illustrated in §2.2; the Ut-Ma'in syllable is discussed in §2.3; vowel contrasts are illustrated in §2.4; consonant contrasts and sequences are illustrated in §2.5; glides and sequences are illustrated in §2.6; the phonetic occurrence of geminate consonants is discussed in §2.7; and the working orthography is illustrated in §2.8 along with the transcription conventions used in this remainder of this study.

2.2 Contrastive tones

Ut-Ma'in has three contrastive level tones: high (H), mid (M), and low (L). In this section I demonstrate tonal contrast with noun stems. Each noun stem is presented with its noun class prefix; all noun class prefixes in citation form have a M tone. The three tone levels are demonstrated for CVC syllable noun stems on the sequences /bah/ in Table 3 and /gah/ in Table 4.
Table 3: Minimal tone triplets for noun stems /bah/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEM TONE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>ḍr-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C5-foot’</td>
<td>ṣt-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C6-feet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>ḍr-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C5-bag’</td>
<td>ṣt-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C6-bags’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>ḍr-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C5-lake’</td>
<td>ṣt-ḅḥh</td>
<td>‘C6-lakes’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Table 3, the noun class morphology is identical for all three singular/plural pairs; the contrast in word meaning is only available from the tonal contrast itself. In the case of Table 4, the tone is contrastive on the noun stems, but there is also a difference in the noun class marking.

Table 4: Minimal tone triplets for noun stems /gah/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEM TONE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>ḍr-ḡḥh</td>
<td>‘C5-lump of cooked grain’</td>
<td>ṣt-ḡḥh</td>
<td>‘C6-lumps of cooked grain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>ū-ḡḥh</td>
<td>‘C3-plait’</td>
<td>ṣs-ḡḥh</td>
<td>‘C4-plaits’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>ṣt-ḡḥh</td>
<td>‘C6-being dry’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tone is also used to distinguish stems with closely related meanings, as in (3).

(3) H ṣt-ḡáp ‘C6-slapping’
    M ū-ḡáp ‘C3-slap’
    L ṣt-ḡáp ‘C6-hitting’

For many otherwise homophonous stems, there is a contrast between two of the three levels, but not a full three way contrast of all three level tones, as demonstrated in (4) and (5). In (4), there is a contrast between a H and L tone stem, but no known M to complete the triplet. In (5), there is a contrast between a M and L tone stem, but no known H to complete the triplet.
(4)  H       ūr-gāg        ‘C5-bundle’
M       --       --
L       ū-gāg        ‘C3-molar’

(5)  H       --       --
M       ūr-gāh        ‘C5-marriage’
L       ū-gāh        ‘C7-lizard’

2.3 Syllable

In this section I discuss the syllable types found in Uţ-Ma’in and present a maximal
syllable template including restrictions on the complexity of the rhyme. The syllable
structure here is also an account of the distribution of phonemes in Uţ-Ma’in.

A minimal syllable is a short V. This is most commonly found in particles,
pronouns and noun class affixes as illustrated in (6).

(6)  [ʃ]        ‘LOC’        [á]        ‘CAUG.OBJ’
    [ɛ]        ‘CDIM.OBJ’        [ʊ]        ‘C3’ (prefix)
    [ɛ́]        ‘C2.obj’        [ɔ́]        ‘C3.obj’

Other common syllable types are VC, CV, and CVC. VC is a very common
syllable shape for noun class prefixes in citation form, as in(3) through (5). CV is a
common shape for noun class agreement pronouns, as illustrated in (7).

(7)  [wá]        ‘C1.OBJ’        [tɔ́]        ‘C6.OBJ’
    [sɛ́]        ‘C4.OBJ’        [mɔ́]        ‘C6B.OBJ’
    [ðɛ́]        ‘C5.OBJ’        [já]        ‘C7.OBJ’

CVC is a common syllable shape for noun and verb stems, as illustrated in all
examples of the previous section. All consonants (see §2.5) are contrastive as onsets;
only /p, b, m, t, s, z, n, r, k, g, w, h/ occur as codas. Consonant contrasts
and distributions are illustrated in §2.5.
Regarding the maximal syllable, in Figure 5, \( \sigma \) represents the syllable; O, the syllable onset; R, the syllable rhyme; Nu, the syllable nucleus; Cd, the syllable coda. C indicates a consonant; G, a glide; and V, a vowel. Parentheses indicate optional elements (here I use “\(V(;)\)” to represent optional length). A maximal rhyme is either type R\(_1\) with the long V: or R\(_2\) with a CC coda; these are schematized below the maximal syllable to make clear the limitations on the rhyme structure. A rhyme may have a heavy nucleus V:C (type R\(_1\)) or a heavy coda VCC (type R\(_2\)), but not both a heavy nucleus and a heavy coda (*V:CC).

![Figure 5: Út-Ma'in syllable](image)

Examples in (8) and (9) illustrate the maximal syllables found in monomorphic Út-Ma'in stems. In these examples, each stem occurs after its citation form noun class prefix, separated by a period that indicates the syllable boundary. In all examples in (8) and (9), the onsets are the maximal CG. In (8) are three examples of the maximal R\(_1\), i.e., V:C; in (9) are two examples of the maximal R\(_2\), i.e., VCC.
Glides are contrastive in onset position. Glides /j, w/ can occur as a simple C onset, as in (10). The glide /w/ can occur as a C coda, as in (11). In examples (10) and (11), the position of the G is represented in the syllable template as C.

(10) [ū.wár] ‘C3-body’
    [ɾm.jár] ‘C6B-health’

(11) [ɾs.héw] ‘C4-dance’
    [aw] ‘C2.crabs’

Maximal consonant sequences in onset are of the type CG, where G represents a glide. Sample CG sequences [gw], [pj], [nj], and [kw] are illustrated in (8). All CG sequences are illustrated in §2.6.2. Glides are discussed further in §2.6, including the limitations regarding which consonants can co-occur with glides in onset position.

In citation form, noun and verb stems have a coda; some stems that appear to be vowel-final generally are pronounced in isolation with a final glottal consonant [h ~ ?], in free variation, as illustrated in (12), (cf. §2.5.6). The glottal fricative is constrastive with vowel initial stems in onset position, but the glottal stop is not. The glottal stop [ʔ] is inserted at morpheme boundaries between a vowel final morpheme and a vowel initial morpheme.

(12) [dɛ] ‘C5.OBJ’
    [ɾr.dɛh] ~ [ɾr.dɛʔ] ‘C5-breast’

[tɔ] ‘C6.OBJ’
    [u.tɔh] ~ [u.tɔʔ] ‘C3-ear’
Vowel contrasts are illustrated in §2.4. All heavy nuclei are of the same vowel quality, as suggested in (8). There are no VV sequences for vowels of different qualities within monosyllabic stems, with perhaps one exception: [ɔt.ɔɛ̃] ‘C6.melting’ that is alternately pronounced [ɔt.ɔʔ.ɛʔ].

Another issue regarding heavy nuclei concerns an alternation between creaky voice and glottal stop for particular stems. I do not know whether long [Vː] is contrastive with creaky [Vː]. I do know that certain stems can be pronounced with creaky [Vː] or as sequences including a glottal stop [VʔV]. If one of these stems occurs after a V noun class prefix, the stem occurs with a nucleus of creaky [Vː]. If one of these stems occurs after a VC noun class prefix, the stem occurs as the sequence [VʔV], which divides into a second stem syllable. This alternation can be represented by the formalisms in (13).

\[
\begin{align*}
[Vː] & \rightarrow [Vː] / [V+C\_\_C] \\
[Vː] & \rightarrow [VʔV] / [VC+C\_\_C]
\end{align*}
\]

The coda sequences CC are limited to the following combinations of consonants: /ks/, /kt/, /st/, Np, Nt, Nd, Nk, and Ng, where N indicates a nasal consonant that shares place of articulation with the following consonant. Some examples can be seen in (8). All coda clusters are illustrated in §2.5.7.

\footnote{See §2.5.6 for information about when a glottal stop is inserted between the vowels of two separate morphemes. The implication is that perhaps this synchronic stem contains a historical morpheme boundary.}
2.4 Vowels

Ut-Ma'in has an eight vowel system with two contrastive lengths,\(^6\) three front vowels /i, e, ɛ/, two central vowels /ə, a/, and three back vowels /u, o, ɔ/ as displayed in Figure 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Central</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>iː iː</td>
<td>uː uː</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near Close-Mid</td>
<td>əː əː</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close-Mid</td>
<td>eː eː</td>
<td>oː oː</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open-Mid</td>
<td>eː eː</td>
<td>əː əː</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>aː aː</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 6: Ut-Ma'in phonemic/contrastive vowels

Contrasts between pairs of all Ut-Ma'in vowels are illustrated in Table 5. All eight vowel qualities have a long counterpart, as demonstrated in Figure 6 and illustrated in Table 6.

Table 5: Ut-Ma'in vowel contrasts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTRAST</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/i/ and /e/</td>
<td>šr.king</td>
<td>‘C5-stump’</td>
<td>šm.rim</td>
<td>‘C6B-darkness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šr.kengi</td>
<td>‘C5-frontier’</td>
<td>šs.rehm</td>
<td>‘C4-speech’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/i/ and /e/</td>
<td>kit</td>
<td>‘side (something)’</td>
<td>nín</td>
<td>‘C2.teeth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>két</td>
<td>‘C3.harvesting maize’</td>
<td>néni</td>
<td>‘C2.ripeness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/ and /e/</td>
<td>šm.reh</td>
<td>‘C6B-pain’</td>
<td>šr.teh</td>
<td>‘C5-arriving’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>št.reh</td>
<td>‘C6-eating’</td>
<td>št.èh</td>
<td>‘C6-laying (egg)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔ/ and /a/</td>
<td>ū.gah</td>
<td>‘C7-molar’</td>
<td>šs.kar</td>
<td>‘C4-horns’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ū.gah</td>
<td>‘C3-plait’</td>
<td>št.škèr</td>
<td>‘C6-cutting open’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u/ , /o/ , /ɔ/</td>
<td>ū.küh</td>
<td>‘C3-shell (turtle)’</td>
<td>št.küt</td>
<td>‘C6-thighs’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šr.köh</td>
<td>‘C5-frog’</td>
<td>šs.köt</td>
<td>‘C4-thorn trees’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šs.ksh</td>
<td>‘C4-silk (maize)’</td>
<td>št.köt</td>
<td>‘C6-crests (bird)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^6\) Section 2.3 suggests vocalic length is a feature of the syllable. For comprehensive discussion, here I contrast all long and short vocalic qualities. Ultimately, I take no stand in this work on whether length is contrastive at the syllable level or the phoneme level.
Based on the wordlist in Smith (2007), Figure 7 presents the frequency distribution of the eight vowel qualities. The mid-central /ɘ/ is by far the most common. This is due to its occurrence in many noun class prefixes that occur in the citation form of all nouns. In addition, all verbs in nominalized form are categorized within the same system of noun classes, and most verbs are cited in a nominalized form. The mid-central /ɘ/ is also found in many word stems. The second most common vowel is /a/. The least common vowels are /o/ and /e/.

---

7 The Ut-Ma'in noun class system is described in §1.1.3.1.1.
2.5 Consonants

In this section I present an inventory of Ut-Ma'in consonants and evidence of contrast. There are six places of articulation for consonants: bilabial, labiodental, alveolar, (alveo)palatal, velar, and glottal. Figure 8 contains all contrastive consonants. The glottal stop [ʔ] is in parentheses in Figure 8 to indicate that I question its phonemic status; the glottal consonants are discussed in §2.5.6.
All voiceless plosives are aspirated to some degree; /t/ and /k/ show the greatest aspiration and /p/ the least. Aspirated and unaspirated plosives are not contrastive. The norm of /t/ is heavily aspirated [tʰ] in coda position and slightly less aspirated in onset position. Since aspirated stops are not contrastive with non-aspirated stop counterparts, in this study I do not indicate aspiration unless in regard to syllable boundaries, where an aspirated final plosive can indicate a coda. The alveolar rhotic, represented as /r/, has three allophones: trilled [r], tap [ɾ] and lateral [l], all in free variation for many speakers. For all speakers [lː] can occur at a morpheme boundary at the junction of two alveolar rhotics /r/, or as the realization of an /r/ and a voiced alveolar stop /d/ consonant coming together at a morpheme boundary (§2.7.2). The nasals /m/ and /n/ contrast. /n/ has an allophone [ŋ] before the velar stops /k, g/ in coda consonant clusters (§2.5.7.2). The glottal fricative /h/ has two allophones: the glottal stop [ʔ] and the glottal fricative [h] in free variation in coda position. The glottal stop only occurs in onset
position when a vowel-final morpheme and a vowel-initial morpheme occur in the same word. The glottal fricative is contrastive with other consonants in onset position.

Examples of all consonant contrasts are illustrated, organized by place of articulation, in the sections below.

2.5.1 Bilabial consonants

Example (14) shows contrast of bilabial consonants /p, b, m/ and the labiovelar glide /w/ in stem initial position, where they can occur as an onset C. Each example is a noun; each stem occurs following a noun class prefix involving [u], which can be from class 1, 3, or 7. In example (14), each stem-initial consonant precedes the mid-central vowel /a/.

(14) /p/ ū.pán ‘C3-facial incision’
     /b/ ū.bár ‘C3-loincloth’
     /m/ ū.mák ‘C7-kidney’
     /w/ ū.wár ‘C3-body’

Example (15) shows contrast of bilabial consonants /p, b, m/ and the labiovelar glide /w/ as C codas. Each stem final consonant follows a central vowel /a/.

(15) /p/ ū.sáp ‘C7-sword’
     /b/ ū.gwáb ‘C7-bamboo’
     /m/ ū.ám ‘C3-pus’
     /w/ ū.âw ‘C7-crab’

2.5.2 Labiodental consonants

Example (16) shows contrast of labiodental consonants /f, v/ in stem initial position as C onset. Each example is a noun; each stem occurs following a noun class prefix.
involving [u], which can be from class 1, 3, or 7. Each stem initial consonant precedes the mid-central high tone vowel /a/. Labiodental consonants do not occur in codas.

(16) \(/{f}/\quad \text{ū.fāh} \quad \text{‘C7-snake’}\)
\(/{v}/\quad \text{ū.vān} \quad \text{‘C3-knife’}\)

2.5.3 Alveolar consonants

Example (17) shows contrast of alveolar consonants /t, d, s, z, n, r/ in syllable onset position. Each example is a noun; each stem occurs following noun class 6B prefix ūm- and precedes the central vowel /a/.

(17) \(/{t}/\quad \text{ūm.tāh} \quad \text{‘C6B-saliva’}\)
\(/{d}/\quad \text{ūm.dāp} \quad \text{‘C6B-sap’}\)
\(/{s}/\quad \text{ūm.sāh} \quad \text{‘C6B-sea’}\)
\(/{z}/\quad \text{ūm.zān} \quad \text{‘C6B-emptiness’}\)
\(/{n}/\quad \text{ūm.nāp} \quad \text{‘C6B-knowledge’}\)
\(/{r}/\quad \text{ūm.rāb} \quad \text{‘C6B-poison’}\)

Example (18) shows contrast of alveolar consonants /t, s, z, n, r/ as C codas. /d/ is not found in as a C coda. Each example is a noun; each C coda consonant follows a high-tone central vowel /a/.

(18) \(/{t}/\quad \text{ūr.fāt} \quad \text{‘C5-life’}\)
\(/{d}/\quad -- \quad --\)
\(/{s}/\quad \text{ūm.bās} \quad \text{‘C6B-urine’}\)
\(/{z}/\quad \text{ūr.kwāz} \quad \text{‘C5-wrist’}\)
\(/{n}/\quad \text{ū.kān} \quad \text{‘C7-ladder’}\)
\(/{r}/\quad \text{ū.wār} \quad \text{‘C3-body’}\)

2.5.4 (Alveo)palatal consonants

The consonants discussed in this section only occur as onsets. Example (19) shows contrast of (alveo)palatal consonants /tʃ, ʒ, j/ in syllable onset position. Each example
is a noun; each stem occurs following noun class 5 prefix ɘ̄r- and precedes a mid-central vowel /ə/.

(19) /tʃ/ ɘ̄r.tʃɔməs ‘C5-clay.stool’  
     /dʒ/ ɘ̄r.dʒɔɾ ‘C5-cudgel’  
     /ʃ/ ɘ̄r.ʃɔt ‘C5-asking’  
     /j/ ɘ̄r.jɔʔ ‘C5-dwelling’

Example (19) shows contrast of all alveolar and alveopalatal fricatives /s, z, ʃ/ in syllable onset position. Each example is a noun; each stem occurs following noun class 5 prefix ɘ̄r- and precedes the central vowel /a/.

(20) /s/ ɘ̄r.sàr ‘C5-wall’  
     /z/ wá.zán.níp ‘C1.guilty person’  
     /ʃ/ ɘ̄r.ʃəɾ ‘C5-water pot’

2.5.5 Velar consonants

Example (21) shows contrast of velar consonants /k, g/ and the labiovelar /w/ as C onsets. Each example is a noun; each stem occurs following noun class 5 prefix ɘ̄r- and precedes a low-tone mid-central vowel /ə/.

(21) /k/ ɘ̄r.kəɾ ‘C5-tumour’  
     /ɡ/ ɘ̄r.gəɾ ‘C5-cheek’  
     /w/ ɘ̄r.wəɾ ‘C5-morning’

Example (22) shows contrast of velar consonants /k, g/ and the labiovelar /w/ in coda position. Each example is a noun; each stem final consonant follows a mid central vowel /a/.

(22) /k/ ū.máʔ ‘C3-kidney’  
     /ɡ/ ɘ̄r.máɡ ‘C5-debt’  
     /w/ ū.əw ‘C7-crab’
2.5.6 Glottal consonants

The glottal fricative /h/ is contrastive with vowel-initial stems in syllable onset position as shown in (23). Aspiration is included for examples in this section where the prominence of the aspiration is an indicator of a syllable boundary. For example, I analyze the noun [stʰ.6kʰ.6r] ‘c6-cutting.open’ as VC.VC.VC because the coda [tʰ] has prominent and prolonged aspiration (VOT of coda [tʰ] 0.0858) in contrast to the CVC root [ték] ‘middle’ (VOT of onset [t] 0.0345). Analyzing [stʰ.6kʰ.6r] ‘c6-cutting.open’ as VC.VC.VC provides the V-initial stem [6k] that contrasts with the h-initial stem of [stʰ.h6kʰ.sè] ‘c6-hiccough’.

(23) /h/ initial stems
------
  a. [/apache] ‘c5-head’  [fh]  ‘c2.grasshoppers’
  b. [hěh] ‘c2.termites’  [fě]  ‘c2.OBJ’
  c. [hóm.má] ‘copulation AG6.DEF/ the copulation’  [og.má]  ‘juice AG6.DEF/ the juice’
  d. [stʰ.h6kʰ.sè] ‘c6-hiccough’  [stʰ.6kʰ.6r]  ‘c6-cutting open’
  e. [h6k.sè.t5] ‘hiccough AG6.DEF/ the hiccough’  [5kʰ.6r.t5]  ‘cutting open AG6.DEF/ the cutting open’
  f. [stʰ.h6tʰ] ‘c6-crossroads’  [stʰ.6tʰ]  ‘c6-catching (in air)’

The glottal stop [ʔ] is in free variation with [h] in coda position, but is not contrastive in syllable onset position. However, a phonetic glottal stop [ʔ] may be inserted at a morpheme break between two vowels. For example, [ū.ʔ5k] ‘c3-half’ occurs with a [ʔ] at the morpheme break between the noun class 3 prefix /ū-/ and the noun root /5k/. This can be represented by the formalism (24).

---

8 Further investigation of syllable weight is needed, particularly with regard to the role of aspiration/VOT in calculating syllable weight.
(24) \( \varnothing \rightarrow [?] / [V\_\_+V] \)

I analyze this as an insertion because the plural form \( \ddash t \ddash k \) has a prominently aspirated consonant-final noun class 6 prefix \( \ddash t^h- \); the glottal stop does not occur. There is no evidence that the lexical form of the root has a glottal stop. In (25), an additional example of glottal insertion is shown for a singular/plural pair.

(25) Singular | Gloss | Plural | Gloss
---|---|---|---
[ūʔk] | ‘C3-half’ | [ūt^h^k] | ‘C6-halves’
[ūʔün] | ‘C7-monitor.lizard’ | [ün] | ‘C2-monitor.lizards’

The glottal fricative /h/ is contrastive in coda position with vowel-final syllables. However, in coda position the glottal fricative [h] and the glottal stop [ʔ] are in free variation, as demonstrated in (26). Further, their occurrence is possibly a phrase final phenomenon. That is, in rapid speech word-final glottal consonants rarely occur unless they are also phrase final. In citation form a glottal consonant almost always occurs on noun and verb stems as the coda of otherwise vowel final words, but the glottal consonant varies in manner between the stop and fricative. In (26), the first column contains glottal-final stems showing the [CVh] ~ [CVʔ] forms in free variation; the second column contains contrasting vowel-final CV syllable words.

(26) glottal-final stems | V-final stems
---|---
[šr.déh] ~ [šr.déʔ] | ‘C5-breast’ | [dé] | ‘C5.OBJ’
[ū.tôh] ~ [ū.tôʔ] | ‘C3-ear’ | [tô] | ‘C6.OBJ’
[št.èh] ~ [št.èʔ] | ‘C6-laying (eggs)’ | [è] | ‘C2.OBJ’
[ǐh] ~ [ỉʔ] | ‘C2.grasshoppers’ | [ỉ] | ‘C\text{DIM}.OBJ’
[wáh] ~ [wáʔ] | ‘C1.child’ | [wá] | ‘C1.OBJ’
2.5.7 Consonant sequences in coda position

Consonant clusters are found in Ut-Ma'in as codas. The following sections illustrate the known instances of the following codas: /ks/, /kt/, /st/, Np, Nt, Nd, Nk, and Ng, where “N” represents a homorganic nasal that occurs in the same place of articulation as the following stop. This is the only position in which the velar nasal occurs within a single morpheme. Across morphemes, [ŋ] is always followed by a velar consonant, and hence I do not analyze it as phonemically contrastive with [n].

2.5.7.1 /ks/ and /kt/ in coda position

In my data there is one instance of the sequence /ks/ in coda position, in the verb root bàks ‘remember’. There is one instance of the sequence /kt/ in coda position: ü-mákt ‘c1-barren woman’. For the plural form, Ø-mákt-nè ‘c2-barren woman-H.PL’ the mid-central vowel can be inserted between the [k] and [t] to produce [mákšt.nè]. The pronunciation [mákt.nè] is also attested, by the same speaker.

2.5.7.2 Homorganic nasal plus stop in coda position

[m, n, ŋ] occur as homorganic nasals (N) before consonants of the same place of articulation, specifically:

$N \rightarrow m / _ [p] #$

$N \rightarrow n / _ [t, d] #$

$N \rightarrow ŋ / _ [k] #$

There are two stems with instances of the sequence /mp/ in coda position: ü-kàmp ‘c7-corn stalk’ and ûr-kwàmp ‘c5-okra’.
There are three stems with instances of the sequence /nt/ in coda position; these are presented in Table 7. There is only one instance of a N plus alveolar stop sequence that does not have an voiceless (and therefore aspirated) release: ũ-sônd ‘C3- pestle’.

Table 7: Distribution of /nt/ consonant cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final /nt/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/sNt/ ũ-rênt ‘C7-mosquito’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/sNt/ ɘ-kwênt ‘C5-hoe’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/aNt/ ũ-zwânt ‘C7-insect’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/uNt/ ɘs-hûnt ‘C4-sweat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ont</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/an/ ɘr-gûnt ‘C5-adam’s apple’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/an/ ū-gûnt ‘C7-eggplant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/an/ ɘs-tûnt ‘C4-swearing’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are sixteen instances of the sequence /Nk/ in the corpus used for this study, including both nouns and verbs; all examples are presented in nominal(ized) form with Table 8 shows the distribution of /Nk/ in coda position; there are no examples of /Nk/ following the vowels /u/ and /o/.

There is one commonly occurring word with the sequence /Ng/. The verb nɔm ‘do, create, make’ plus the past tense suffix -:g ‘PST’ has two available pronunciations [nɔm.ɘg] and [nɒng]. This past tense verb form is used in the presentational impersonal construction, which is common in the early lines of folk narratives (see Chapter V §5.2).
Table 8: Distribution of /Nk/ as consonant clusters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final /ŋk/</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/iNk/</td>
<td>ŋ-r-kiŋk</td>
<td>‘C5-stump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eNk/</td>
<td>ŋ-w-ćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C7-shin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋtʰ-ćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6-disappearing’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋm-gćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6B-walking sideways like a crab’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ċsćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6.choking’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ċt-kútárćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6-brain’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ëNk/</td>
<td>ċjęŋk</td>
<td>‘crooked’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/œNk/</td>
<td>ŋm-dćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6B-fever’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/añk/</td>
<td>ŋm-çeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6B-work’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋďđängeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6.stamping with foot’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋw-ćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C3-repairing’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ċtćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6-decorate’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋm-rćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6B-smoothness’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*uNk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*oNk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/œNk/</td>
<td>ŋ-r-pćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C5-forehead’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋzćeŋk</td>
<td>‘C6-preparing’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5.7.3 /st/ in coda position

The cluster /st/ only occurs on noun class 6 nominalized verb forms. This may be an indication that the source of the consonant cluster involves a historical morpheme boundary, involving verbal derivational morphology akin to the so-called verbal extensions of related Bantu languages (see Chapter III §3.3.1) for commonly occurring verbal suffixes in Ût-Ma’in). Table 9 shows the distribution of /st/ following all vowels except /e/. For at least the word ʤʔ-tʃʔst ‘C6-lowering (sth)’, the root is known to be tʃʔiz ‘descend’, though it surfaces as ʤʔ-tʃʔz ‘C6-descending’ when nominalized. This would indicate that the cluster /st/ is (historically) the result of adding a /t/ suffix to a root.
ending in an alveolar fricative. The suffix adds a causative meaning (see Chapter III §3.3.1).

Table 9: Distribution of /st/ consonant clusters as codas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final /st/</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ist/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-rist</td>
<td>‘C6-abandoning (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/est/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-rèst</td>
<td>‘C6-dropping (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ɘ̄st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɵst/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-dòst</td>
<td>‘C6-picking up (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɵst/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-tʃɵstʰ</td>
<td>‘C6-lowering (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɵst/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-ɵst</td>
<td>‘C6-catching (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɵst/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-pɵst</td>
<td>‘C6-straining (food)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ast/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-hàst</td>
<td>‘C6-taking away (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ust/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-ʊst</td>
<td>‘C6-losing (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ost/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-hòst</td>
<td>‘C6-undressing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɵst/</td>
<td>ɘ̄t-tɵst</td>
<td>‘C6-leaning (sth) against (sth)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.6 Glides

This section presents the distribution of glides.

2.6.1 Glides as C in onset and coda

The glide /w/ occurs as a simple syllable onset with limited distribution. It only occurs before the central vowels /ə/ and /a/. /w/ occurs as a syllable coda following the vowels /e, ə, a/. 
Table 10: Distribution of /w/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial /w/</th>
<th>Final /w/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*wi</td>
<td>*iw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*we</td>
<td>*ew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*we</td>
<td>/ew/ 5s-héw ‘C4-dance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/wə/ 5r-wən ‘C5-morning’</td>
<td>/sw/ 5r-njsw ‘C5-mushroom’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/wa/ ü-wăr ‘C3-body’</td>
<td>/aw/ ü-àw ‘C7-crab’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wu</td>
<td>*uw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wo</td>
<td>*ow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wɔ</td>
<td>*ɔw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sequence /wa/ commonly occurs as a noun class 1 marker: wā ‘C1.SUBJ’, wá ‘C1.OBJ’, -wá ‘AG1’. The sequence /wə/ is also used for the noun class 1 relative pronoun: wə ‘C1.REL’.

The glide /j/ occurs as a syllable onset with limited distribution. It only occurs before the vowels /i, ə, a, ɔ/. /j/ does not occur as a coda. There are no */ai/ or */aj/ sequences in Ut-Ma’in.

Table 11: Distribution of /j/ as syllable onset

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution of /j/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ji/ [ət-ʃib] ‘C6-dip’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*je</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/jɔ/ [u-ʃəh] ‘C3-rain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ja/ [s-m-jär] ‘C6B-health’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*jo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/jɔ/ [s-m-jəh] ‘C6B-wickedness’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although not found lexically in the onset of a stem, the sequence /je/ is found as an allomorph of the focus marker ə when the focus marker is suffixed to verb stems that
end in a vowel, as in ɔ́-jé ‘COP-FOC’; it is also found in the second syllable of the stem ɘ̄r-vjëh ‘C5-breath’.

The sequence /ja/ commonly occurs as a noun class 7 marker: jā ‘C7.SUBJ’, já ‘C7.OBJ’, -jā ‘AG7’. The sequence /ju/ as a CV syllable commonly occurs as the result of two morphemes coming together, as in (27) and (28)

(27) /ʃār.jù.ʧáŋ/
    jār = j-` = u-ʧáŋ
    bone = AG7-ASSOC-C7-fish
    ‘fish bone’
(28) /té.jù.rāh/
    té = j-` = u-rā
    wood = AG7-ASSOC = C3-fire
    ‘firewood’

2.6.2 Glides as G in syllable onset CG sequences

When a CG sequence is the onset of a syllable, there are certain co-occurrence restrictions regarding which C and which G can co-occur. There are also restrictions on the vowels of the nuclei for syllables with CG onsets.

All CG sequences occur before the mid-central vowel /ɘ/; most also occur before /a/. Other vowels rarely occur following a CG sequence. This matches the pattern for glide onsets-plus-nuclei in general, as described in the previous section, §2.6.1.

Bilabial and labiodental consonants /p, b, m, v/ precede /j/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/. There are only two examples of a /vj/ sequence in onset position: ɘ̄t-vjëh ‘C6-wringing out’ and ɘ̄t-vjën ‘C6-blowing nose’.

35
(29) /p + j/ /pjɔ/ Ɔt. pjðh  ‘C6-entrance huts’
     /pjɑ/ ū. pjɑt  ‘C7-moon’
/b + j/ /bjɛ/ ū. bjɛn  ‘C3-waist’
     /bjɔ/ Ɔt. bjɔz  ‘C6-fainting’
/m + j/ /mjɔ/ Ɔt. mjɔg  ‘C6-twisting’
     /mja/ ūm. mjাম  ‘C6B-wind’

Alveolar consonants /n, r/ occur with /j/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/, as in (30).

(30) /n + j/ /njɔ/ ūn. njɔw  ‘C5-mushroom’
     /nja/ ūn. njաh  ‘C3-gift’
/r + j/ /rjɔ/ ū. rjɔn  ‘C3-shadow’
     /rja/ ū. rjaپ  ‘C7-whip’

The velar consonant /k/ occurs with /j/ before the vowels /e, ɘ/; /g/ occurs with /j/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/.

(31) /k + j/ /kjɔ/ Ɔt. kjɛɾ  ‘C6-piercing’
     /kja/ ūr. kjɛɾ  ‘C5-difficulty’
/g + j/ /gjɛ/ ū. gjɛɾ  ‘C3-fear’
     /gjɔ/ ūm. gjɛp  ‘C6B-night’

The glottal fricative /h/ occurs with /j/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/.

(32) /h + j/ /hjɔ/ ūm. hjɛɾ  ‘C6B-blood’
     /hja/ ūm. hjɛɾ  ‘C6B-vision’

The alveolar consonants /s, ʃ, r/ occur with /w/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/.

(33) /s + w/ /swɔ/ Ɔt. swɛɾ  ‘C6-lick’
     /swa/ ūr. swɛɾ  ‘C5-nose’
/z + w/ /zwɔ/ ū. zwɛɾ  ‘C3-dry season’
     /zwa/ ūr. zwɛɾ  ‘C5-worm’
/r + w/ /rwɔ/ Ɔt. rwɛɾ  ‘C6-snatching’
     /rwa/ ūt. rwɛɾ  ‘C6-clay (lumps)’

The alveopalatal consonant /tʃ/ occurs with /w/ before /e, ɘ, a/; /dʒ/ occurs with /w/ before the central vowels /ɘ/ and /a/.
The velar consonant /k/ occurs with /w/ before /e, ə, a/; /g/ occurs with /w/ before the central vowels /ı/ and /a/.

### Consonant assimilation resulting in geminate consonants

In this section, I present a very preliminary analysis of Ut-Ma'in geminate consonants. These Ut-Ma'in forms occur in citation forms of nouns in classes 4, 5, 6, and 6B as well as in several morphosyntactic constructions, i.e., whenever the prefixed form of a noun is used (see Chapter III §3.1.1.2). At some morpheme boundaries between consonant-final noun class affixes and consonant-initial stems, consonant assimilation occurs, resulting in geminate [CC] sequences or long [Cː]. Example (36) illustrates the assimilation in a word marked for noun class 4. The geminate [dː] is apparent when we compare the plural noun class 6 word, [ʕdːor] ‘c4-napes of necks’, with its singular counterpart in noun class 7, [ʕdor] ‘c7-nape of neck’. In the sections below the phenomenon is illustrated for the full range of noun classes with a VC prefix.

### Examples

(34)  `/ʃ` + `/w`/  `/ʃwɛ`/  `ʃwɛn`  ‘slowly’  
`ʃwɔ`/  `u.ʃwɔm`  ‘C3-darkness’  
`ʃwa`/  `ʃwə.nɛ`  ‘enter.IMP’  
`dʒ` + `/w`/  `/dʒwɔ`/  `dʒwɔr`  ‘C3-fear’  
`dʒwa`/  `u.dʒwak`  ‘C7-horse’

(35)  `/k` + `/w`/  `/kwe`/  `st.kwɛh`  ‘C6-scabbies’  
`kwɔ`/  `u.kwɔk`  ‘C7-groundnut shell’  
`kwa`/  `r.kwɔz`  ‘C5-wrist’  
`g` + `/w`/  `/gwɔ`/  `gwɔp`  ‘C1.virgin’  
`gwa`/  `st.gwah`  ‘C6-vomit’

2.7 Consonant assimilation resulting in geminate consonants
McGill (2012), a historical study of the development of long consonants in the related language Cicipu, brought to my attention the possibility that Ut-Ma'in may have geminate consonants. In Ut-Ma'in, the source of these geminate consonants is quite transparently the interaction of a prefix and a consonant initial stem. However, unlike in Cicipu, Ut-Ma'in geminate consonants are limited to a subset of the consonant inventory based on features of place and manner of articulation. Further, they are transparently the result of consonant assimilation at a morpheme boundary. The spectrographic evidence does not allow us to distinguish one way or the other whether there is a syllable boundary in the midst of a geminate consonant.

For this study, I consider these geminate consonants as phonetic phenomena and analyze them as heterosyllabic. I thus do not analyze Ut-Ma'in as having contrastive short and long consonant phonemes, but I do intend here to bring attention to and illustrate the phonetically long consonants and the particular morphophonemic environments where they are found. This synchronic phonetic pattern in Ut-Ma'in should help understand the development of the inventory of contrastive geminate consonants as reported for Cicipu, and as may exist in other un(der)described Kainji languages.

2.7.1 Geminate consonants in noun class 4

With class 4 nouns, geminate consonants are the result of the /s/ of the noun class 4 prefix fully assimilating to the place and manner of certain stem-initial consonants. /s/ only assimilates to alveolar and alveopalatal consonants in this environment, as
illustrated in Table 12. Column one gives the illustrated sequence of consonants; column two gives the phonetic pronunciation of the class 4 noun form; column three gives the morphological analysis; and column four gives the gloss. The final two columns of Table 12 include preliminary duration measurements in seconds (SS) from one speaker based on field recordings. The column labelled “Duration (SS) Plural [C:]” contains a measurement in seconds of the relevant lengthened consonant [C:] from a recording of the noun class 6 form. The column labelled “Duration (SS) Singular [C]” contains a measurement in seconds of the corresponding short consonant [C] from a recording of the singular form, as relevant. Some forms have no singular counterpart, which is indicated by two dashes “--”. In the phonetic form, length is represented by [:]. The specific position of length is determined by spectographic analysis. Thus, for example, in the word for ‘soup’, the closure of the affricate is held (before the fricative release), but the aspiration and labialization are not visibly lengthened compared to non-geminate word forms.

2.7.2 Geminate consonants in noun class 5

Geminate [l:] is most commonly found in words marked for noun class 5. In Table 13, the geminate [l:] results from the /t/ of the noun class 5 prefix combining with an initial /r/ consonant of the stem. The stem initial /r/ is evident in the plural examples, where the noun class 6 prefix ɘt- precedes each example stem.

-----------------------------

⁹ /s/ assimilates to all alveolar stops and alveopalatal stops and affricates except the voiceless alveolar stop.
Table 12: Geminate consonants in noun class 4 citation forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Phonetic Form</th>
<th>Morphological Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Duration (SS)</th>
<th>Duration (SS) Sing. [C:]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /d/</td>
<td>[ðdːr]</td>
<td>ŋs-dɔr</td>
<td>‘C4-napes of neck’</td>
<td>0.161856</td>
<td>0.075346&lt;sup&gt;10&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /s/</td>
<td>[ɔstːʔ]</td>
<td>ŋs-sɛh</td>
<td>‘C4-oil palms’</td>
<td>0.226799</td>
<td>0.143962&lt;sup&gt;11&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /sw/</td>
<td>[ɔːstːmɔːr]</td>
<td>ŋs-swɔmɔɾ</td>
<td>‘C4-plucking’</td>
<td>0.230354</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /z/</td>
<td>[zːʒɡ]</td>
<td>ŋs-zɡ</td>
<td>‘C4-weeds’</td>
<td>0.224517</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /zw/</td>
<td>[zːʃwː]</td>
<td>ŋs-zwā</td>
<td>‘C4-stabbing’</td>
<td>0.178450</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /ʃ/</td>
<td>[ʃːʌb]</td>
<td>ŋs-ʃāb</td>
<td>‘C4-bark (tree)’</td>
<td>0.214158</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/ + /ʃw/</td>
<td>[ʃːwː]</td>
<td>ŋs-ʃwā</td>
<td>‘C4-splinters’</td>
<td>0.213476</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13: Geminate [lː] in noun class 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Phonetic Form</th>
<th>Morphological Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/lː/ + /r/</td>
<td>[ʎːɛm]</td>
<td>ŋr-rɛm</td>
<td>‘C5-tongue’</td>
<td>ŋt-rɛm</td>
<td>‘C6-tongues’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/lː/ + /ɾj/</td>
<td>[ʎːjajːpʰɡ]</td>
<td>ŋr-ɾjapʰɡ</td>
<td>‘C5-rape’</td>
<td>ŋt-ɾjapʰɡ</td>
<td>‘C6-rape’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/lː/ + /ɾw/</td>
<td>[ʎːwː]</td>
<td>ŋr-ɾwā</td>
<td>‘C5-clay (lump)’</td>
<td>ŋt-ɾwāb</td>
<td>‘C6-clay (lumps)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14 includes preliminary duration measurements (in seconds) from one speaker based on field recordings. The column labelled “Duration [lː]” contains a measurement in seconds of the [lː] in the given example. The column labelled “Duration [r]” contains a measurement in seconds of the corresponding plural form from

Table 13. Each instance of [lː] is more than twice the duration of the [r] in the corresponding plural form.

---

<sup>10</sup> The singular form is [ʊ.ðɔr] ʊ-ðɔr ‘C7-nape of neck’.

<sup>11</sup> The singular form is [ʊ.ʃɛʔ] ʊ-ʃɛʔ ‘C7-oil palm’.
Table 14: Duration measurements of [lː] and [r]

| Sequence | Phonetic Form | Morphological Form | Gloss         | Duration [lː] | Duration [r]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/r/ + /r/</td>
<td>[ʃlːem]</td>
<td>ŋr-rém</td>
<td>‘C5-tongue’</td>
<td>0.220941</td>
<td>0.098383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/ + /rj/</td>
<td>[ʃljːpːg]</td>
<td>ŋr-rjːpːg</td>
<td>‘C5-rape’</td>
<td>0.157115</td>
<td>0.079106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/ + /rw/</td>
<td>[ʃlːwːb]</td>
<td>ŋr-rwːb</td>
<td>‘C5-clay (lump)’</td>
<td>0.219566</td>
<td>0.091217</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long [lː] is also found in the word [ʊ.tʃ.lːɔ] ʊ-tʃɛː ‘c3-market’, which is likely based on the root [túːr] ‘pot’ as illustrated in (37). In (38) and (39), [túːr] is the head noun root modified by an Associative Construction. But in both examples, the final [r] of the head noun root interacts with the initial [d] of the noun class 5 agreement prefix of the Associative Construction to become [lː].

(37)  [ɔr.túːr]
  ŋr-túːr
  c5-pot
  ‘pot’

(38)  [túːlːɔːwːb]
  túːr = d-ɔ = r-rwːb
  pot = AG5-ASSOC = C5-clay
  ‘pot (made) of clay’

(39)  [túːlːɔːkwɔːm]
  tʰúːr = d-ɔ = r-kwɔːm
  pot = AG5-ASSOC = C5-iron
  ‘pot (made) of iron’

Other instances of [lː] are found at morpheme boundaries when the sequences /r + r/ or /r + d/ occur, as in (40) and (41).
2.7.3 Geminate consonants in noun class 6

For class 6, geminate consonants are the result of the /t/ of the noun class 6 prefix fully assimilating to the place and manner of certain stem-initial consonants. /t/ only assimilates to alveolar and alveopalatal consonants in this environment, as illustrated in Table 15. Column one gives the illustrated sequence of consonants; column two gives the phonetic pronunciation of the class 6 noun form; column three gives the morphological form; and column four gives the gloss. The final two columns of Table 15 include preliminary duration measurements (in seconds) from one speaker based on field recordings. The column labelled “Duration (SS) Plural [Cː]” contains a measurement in seconds of the relevant lengthened consonant [Cː] from a recording of the noun class 6 form. The column labelled “Duration (SS) Singular [C]” contains a measurement in seconds of the relevant consonant [C] from a recording of the singular form. The final column contains a percentage calculated from the duration of [Cː] divided by the duration of [C]. In each case, the lengthened consonant is at least 150% longer that the non-lengthened counterpart. In the case of [tː] and [dː], the closure of the lengthened consonant is more than twice as long as the corresponding consonant [d].
When the initial consonant of the stem is an alveolar nasal /n/, the class 6 prefix and the stem initial /n/ are realized phonetically as [m].

Table 15: Geminate consonants in noun class 6 citation forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Phonetic Form</th>
<th>Morphological Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Duration (SS)</th>
<th>Duration (SS)</th>
<th>[C2]/[C] = %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /t/</td>
<td>[ðtːɄ]</td>
<td>ð-tːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-ears’</td>
<td>0.23041</td>
<td>0.11433</td>
<td>202%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /d/</td>
<td>[ðdːɄ]</td>
<td>ð-dːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-breasts’</td>
<td>0.19832</td>
<td>0.06976</td>
<td>284%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /s/</td>
<td>[ðːɄp]</td>
<td>ð-ːɄp</td>
<td>‘C6-songs’</td>
<td>0.23465</td>
<td>0.14141</td>
<td>166%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /sw/</td>
<td>[ðswːɄ]</td>
<td>ð-swːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-noses’</td>
<td>0.22360</td>
<td>0.12728</td>
<td>176%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /z/</td>
<td>[ðzːɄp]</td>
<td>ð-zːɄp</td>
<td>‘C6-forests’</td>
<td>0.22404</td>
<td>0.09638</td>
<td>232%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /ʃ/</td>
<td>[ʃːɄr]</td>
<td>ʃ-ːɄr</td>
<td>‘C6-bones’</td>
<td>0.23586</td>
<td>0.12827</td>
<td>184%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /ʃːɄ</td>
<td>[ʃːɄːɄn]</td>
<td>ʃ-ːɄːɄn</td>
<td>‘C6-feathers’</td>
<td>0.24936</td>
<td>0.16317</td>
<td>153%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /dʒ/</td>
<td>[dʒːɄːɄr]</td>
<td>dʒ-ːɄːɄr</td>
<td>‘C6-cudgels’</td>
<td>0.21661</td>
<td>0.11822</td>
<td>183%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /dʒːɄ</td>
<td>[dʒːɄːɄn]</td>
<td>dʒ-ːɄːɄn</td>
<td>‘C6-knees’</td>
<td>0.20326</td>
<td>0.13050</td>
<td>156%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /n/</td>
<td>[nːːɄ]</td>
<td>n-ːːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-mouths’</td>
<td>0.204073</td>
<td>0.089318</td>
<td>228%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /nːɄ</td>
<td>[nːːɄːɄ]</td>
<td>n-ːːɄːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-sores’</td>
<td>0.185440</td>
<td>0.095136</td>
<td>195%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/ + /nːɄ</td>
<td>[nːːmːɄ]</td>
<td>n-ːːmːɄ</td>
<td>‘C6-things’</td>
<td>0.185775</td>
<td>0.082705</td>
<td>225%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.7.4 Geminate consonants in noun class 6b

For noun class 6b, a geminate [mː] results from the /m/ of the noun class 6b prefix combining with an initial /m/ consonant of the stem, illustrated in Table 16. Class 6b is often used for mass and non-count nouns so there is no way to draw a comparison.

---

between singular and plural forms. Instead, the column “Duration (SS) [m]” contains a measurement of the initial [m] in [u.múš] tū-múš ‘C7-cat’, uttered by the same speaker.

Table 16: Geminate [m:] in noun class 6B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Phonetic Form</th>
<th>Morphological Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Duration (SS)</th>
<th>Duration (SS)</th>
<th>[C-]/[C] %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/m/ + /m/</td>
<td>[ âmː h]</td>
<td>âm-meéh</td>
<td>‘C6B-milk’</td>
<td>0.257700</td>
<td>0.112540</td>
<td>229%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/ + /mj/</td>
<td>[ âm:jäh]</td>
<td>âm-mjäh</td>
<td>‘C6B-wind’</td>
<td>0.173311</td>
<td>0.112540</td>
<td>154%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/ + /m/</td>
<td>[ rîmː]</td>
<td>rîm-mə</td>
<td>‘black-AG6B’</td>
<td>0.161260</td>
<td>0.112540</td>
<td>143%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long [m:] is also found at other morpheme boundaries involving noun class 6B morphology. In (42), the adjective rîm ‘black’ takes the noun class 6B agreement suffix -mə ‘-AG6B’. As a result of the /m + m/, the adjective is pronounced as [rîmː].

(42) [bəːm rîmː]
    bô-âm rîm-mə
    water-C6B black-AG6B
    ‘dark color’

We can tell that the lengthened [m:] is not lexically part of the adjective root rîm ‘black’ because in (43) the adjective takes the class 2 agreement suffix -ê ‘-AG2’ and there is no length.

(43) [fâːrimê]
    fâ rîm-ê
    snake black-AG2
    ‘spitting cobra’

Other instances of [m:] are found at morpheme boundaries when the sequences /m + m/ occur.
2.8 Orthography and transcription conventions

Although the inventory of sounds discussed in this chapter has been based on only the Ut-Ma'Ror variety, data from multiple varieties of Ut-Ma'in are included throughout the remainder of this study. The occurrence of variety specific pronunciations is maintained, but the symbols used have all been presented in this chapter.

In the data transcriptions presented in the remainder of this study, I use a phonemic representation of the sounds of Ut-Ma'in, with perhaps one exception. I write the syllable-final glottal consonant only when it is prominent in particular utterences. The occurrence of a glottal consonant provides some information about morphemes that do not cliticize in particular environments.

Long vowel syllable nuclei are indicated by the vowel symbol followed by the length symbol, e.g., <aː>. Note that length is represented in Table 17 below as part of the vowel phonemes for comparison with their orthographic representation. As stated in §2.4 I make no determination in this study as to whether the vowel length contrastive at the phoneme level or if the contrast is better understood as a syllable contrast.

Table 17 summarizes the phonemes presented in §2.4 through §2.6 and aligns each phoneme with the practical orthographic symbol, as used by speakers who are involved in ongoing literature development and who are actively supportive of language development in the community. The practical orthography is used in the presentation of the sample texts in the appendices.
Table 17: Ḫt-Ma'in Phones and Ḫt-Ma'in orthographic symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phoneme(s) as written in the body of this work</th>
<th>Orthographic symbol, used in Appendix texts</th>
<th>Phoneme(s) as written in the body of this work</th>
<th>Orthographic symbol, used in Appendix texts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/a/</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/aa/</td>
<td>aa</td>
<td>/o/</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>oo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tʃ/</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>qq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛ/</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛ/</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛɛ/</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/fi/</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>/u/</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/g/</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>/u/</td>
<td>uu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>uu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ii/</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>/v/</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dʒ/</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>/ʔ/</td>
<td>'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER III

WORDS AND PHRASES

Before looking at predicative uses of nominals, I will first describe what I mean by noun and Nominal. This chapter takes into consideration noun word forms, noun phrase (NP) structure and agreement phenomena, and how these nominal constructions are distinct from other word categories, notably verbs and adjectives. For completeness and because few descriptions of Ut-Ma'in exist, this chapter also presents other word categories including: Numerals/Quantifiers, Adverbs, Prepositions, Pronouns, Demonstratives, and clause level Particles.

The morphosyntactic behaviors of each word category are described below. Regarding the three main word categories, the typologically unmarked function of nouns in Ut-Ma'in is to reference an object; adjectives primarily modify with a property concept; verbs predicate an action (Croft 2001:88ff). Figure 9 models the three major Ut-Ma'in word categories arising due to the intersections of semantics and function. In order to use a particular word category for a non-prototypical function, additional morphology (e.g. derivation) or additional syntax (e.g. phrase structure) must be used. Figure 10 adds some of the available morphosyntactic means used to fill in the grid of semantics and function.

For example, in order to use a noun in a modification function, the noun will occur within a Prepositional Phrase (PP) or an Associative Phrase (AssocP; see Chapter IV). A noun or adjective may occur as the main predicate within a Copula Construction. A verb, for example, may have a modification function within a Relative Clause when an
entire clause is used to modify a noun (see Chapter XI). Central to the thesis of this work, note that verbs can occur with additional morphology to function as Action Nominals, and in turn these Action Nominals can occur in various NP constructions typical of all nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference Function</th>
<th>Modification Function</th>
<th>Predication Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 9:** U’t-Ma'in major word categories (based on the part-of-speech theory of Croft 2001:88)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference Function</th>
<th>Modification Function</th>
<th>Predication Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>PPs, AssocPs</td>
<td>Copula Cnxs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominals</td>
<td>ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>Copula Cnxs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominals</td>
<td>AssocPs, Relative Clauses</td>
<td>VERBS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 10:** U’t-Ma'in major word categories and other construction (Cxn) types
In Út-Ma'in, almost every word is multi-morphemic; this is briefly discussed here, but further detail is provided in subsequent sections. Each major word category in Út-Ma'in has certain categories of morphology characteristically associated to it; this category-default morphosyntactic coding is marked by dotted-rectangular lines in Figure 11. Nouns in Út-Ma'in are lexically assigned to a noun class and most noun classes are evident in overt morphology on the noun word; noun class designation also indicates number (§3.1). In fact, all referring expressions in Út-Ma'in are assigned a noun class. Adjectives in Út-Ma'in must agree with the noun class of a referent noun (NOUN CLASS AG); this is the simplest morphological form they can have. The referent noun may be within the same phrase or the same clause, or the referent is generally recoverable from the discourse (§3.1.5). Verbs in Út-Ma'in may be marked for TENSE by means of a suffix. In some cases and in some clauses, pronominal subjects may cliticize to the verb word, but this is not required argument indexation or agreement on the verb (§3.3).

The solid boxes in Figure 11 represent the use of additional morphosyntactic coding beyond the category-default morphology of each major word category, by means of which parts of speech can fulfill non-characteristic functions. These additional morphosyntactic devices include word formation affixes and phrase syntax.
In the remaining sections of this chapter, I describe the morphosyntactic behavior of the various word categories beginning with the major categories noun (§3.1), adjective (§3.2) and verb (§3.3). Section 3.4 describes other word classes which share some structural properties with nouns including numerals and quantifiers, but which have a different distribution in syntax. Section 3.5 describes the morphosyntactic properties of pronouns, definite and indefinite markers, and demonstratives. All three are directly tied to the expression of noun class for the referent noun. The final sections discuss prepositions, interjections, ideophones and clause-level particles.
3.1 Nouns

Ut-Ma'in noun words vary in shape based on the particular noun phrase (hereafter NP) construction in which they occur. Each lexical noun is assigned to a particular class. After a brief introduction to the noun class system of Ut-Ma'in, I survey the morphosyntactic properties of nouns in various phrase types or constructional environments. This section is not meant as an exhaustive presentation of NP morphosyntax. I refer the reader to Smith (2007: Chapters 2 and 3) for more thorough treatment of Ut-Ma'in noun class morphosyntax and morphophonemic realizations.

3.1.1 Overview of the noun class system of Ut-Ma'in

Ut-Ma'in is a noun class language in which elements within a NP show concord or agreement with the head noun (Gerhardt 1989; Smith 2007); I exclusively use the term “agreement” for such concord. The Ut-Ma'in noun class system has fourteen distinct morphosyntactic patterns (Smith 2007: 26), presented in Table 18. The various forms in each row of Table 18 indicate the particular forms, found in different morphosyntactic contexts, that correspond to each class. The class labels (expressed by numerals), used when glossing examples throughout this paper, follow Smith (2007) and Paterson (2012).\footnote{Smith (2007) counts thirteen distinct patterns. Blench (2018) adds the fourteenth pattern, 2n, that was only mentioned as an aside in Smith (2007). Except for class 6 and 6B, which are not related, the B classes share agreement with the other class of that number (e.g., class 3 and 3B), but differ in noun prefix or suffix.}
The class labels also follow the Bantu numbering tradition in that odd numbers indicate singular forms and even numbers indicate plurals (cf. discussion of the Bleek-Meinhof numbering system in Welmers 1973: 163). A null Ø symbol indicates no overt morphological marking. When the null Ø symbol occurs in examples, it is glossed with the appropriate class label for that particular lexeme based on agreement phenomena. Tone is omitted Table 18 because tone varies based on the particular grammatical construction in which the affixes occur.

I use the term NOUN CLASS to refer to the pattern seen across a whole row in Table 6. That is, the combined pattern of the morphological class used on a particular noun (Corbett’s (1999:150) controller gender) plus the set of class agreeing markers that occur on other clause constituents (Corbett’s (1991:150) target gender). I use the term

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Label</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Noun Prefix</th>
<th>Noun Suffix</th>
<th>Agreement Prefix</th>
<th>Agreement Suffix</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>u-/w-/ Ø-</td>
<td>-wa</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>u-/w-/ Ø-</td>
<td>-wa</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-ε</td>
<td>ε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>(-ne)Ø-</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-ε</td>
<td>ε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>u-/ Ø-</td>
<td>-ø</td>
<td>ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>u-/Ø-</td>
<td>-ø</td>
<td>ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>s-</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>s-</td>
<td>-se</td>
<td>se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>-d</td>
<td>d-</td>
<td>-de</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>t-</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>t-</td>
<td>-tø</td>
<td>tø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>MASS/DIM PL</td>
<td>m-</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>m-</td>
<td>-mø</td>
<td>mø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>u-</td>
<td>-j</td>
<td>j-</td>
<td>-ja</td>
<td>ja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Ø-</td>
<td>-j</td>
<td>j-</td>
<td>-ja</td>
<td>ja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>i-</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUG</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
noun class **PAIRINGS** to refer to sets of two noun classes that occur with the same noun root, where one class prefix marks the singular and a second distinct class prefix marks the plural. These pairings provide insight into the semantic characteristics that unify groups of nouns in Ut-Ma'in.

### 3.1.2 Semantics of noun classes in Ut-Ma'in

The assignment of a noun to a noun class is not completely arbitrary, as there is evidence of active semantic assignment of loan words (Paterson 2012:232). Singular and plural noun classes pair together for particular lexemes, and it is precisely this organization that shows the greatest semantic cohesion (e.g. the pair of classes 1 ‘singular’ and 2 ‘plural’ is used for humans). Semantic classification tendencies occur for pairings of nouns designating human, animate, inanimate, size and shape concepts. Table 19 lists the semantic generalizations for each singular/plural pairing indicated by **SMALL CAPS** in the Semantics column. In some cases, the few attested examples in a particular pairing are represented by glosses rather than a generalization or characteristic. For example, a member of the pairing 5/6 has high likelihood of being **INANIMATE** and **ROUND**, but the pairing 5/2 contains only one item ‘puff adder’. Individual lexeme examples are in ‘single quotes’ in the Semantics column.
Table 19: Semantic tendencies in Ut-Ma' in noun classes and noun class pairings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Class Or Class Pairing</th>
<th>Noun Affixes</th>
<th>Object Pronouns</th>
<th>Semantics</th>
<th># in 2007 wordlist</th>
<th># Loans in 2007 wordlist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1B/2</td>
<td>wa-/á-</td>
<td>wá/é</td>
<td>AGENT NOMINALIZATIONS</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2B</td>
<td>ú-/Ø-</td>
<td>wá/é</td>
<td>‘barren woman’, ‘fool’</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>ú-/t-</td>
<td>wá/tó</td>
<td>‘grandchild’</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B/6</td>
<td>Ò-/t-</td>
<td>wá/tó</td>
<td>HUMANS</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>ú-/Ø-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>‘giant’</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B/2B</td>
<td>Ò-/Ø-</td>
<td>já/é</td>
<td>HUMANS</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/2B</td>
<td>ú-/ne</td>
<td>já/é</td>
<td>‘prostitute’, ‘witch’</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/2</td>
<td>r-/Ø-</td>
<td>dé/é</td>
<td>‘puff adder’</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/2</td>
<td>ú-/Ø-</td>
<td>já/é</td>
<td>ANIMALS, FRUITS, CROPS</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/6</td>
<td>ú-/t-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>inanimate, kinship terms</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B/6</td>
<td>Ò-/t-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>‘entrance hut’/‘fish trap’</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>ú-/s-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>INANIMATE and/or LONG</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B/4</td>
<td>Ò-/s-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>‘heart’/‘dream’/‘island’</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/6</td>
<td>r-/t-</td>
<td>dé/tó</td>
<td>INANIMATE and/or ROUND</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/4</td>
<td>r-/s-</td>
<td>dé/sé</td>
<td>‘thatch’ / ‘arrow’</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/4</td>
<td>ú-/s-</td>
<td>já/sé</td>
<td>NON-FOOD PLANTS and/or LONG</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/6</td>
<td>ú-/t-</td>
<td>já/tó</td>
<td>‘feather’/‘iron’/‘baby sling’</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/AUG</td>
<td>ú-/ã-</td>
<td>/MPL</td>
<td>AUGMENTATIVE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM/4</td>
<td>i-/s-</td>
<td>í/sé</td>
<td>‘argument’</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM/6M</td>
<td>i-/m-</td>
<td>í/mõ</td>
<td>DIMINUTIVE</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ò-</td>
<td>é</td>
<td>‘beer’, ‘money’, ‘beach’</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ú-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>SEASONS,DIRECTIONS, PROPERTIES</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>s-</td>
<td>sé</td>
<td>SPEECH ACTS</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>dé</td>
<td>EMOTIONS,BOUNDARIES, AGE</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>t-</td>
<td>tó</td>
<td>NON-COUNT NOUNS</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>m-</td>
<td>mõ</td>
<td>MASS NOUNS,LIQUIDS,POWDRERS</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ú-</td>
<td>já</td>
<td>‘eczema’</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The distribution of noun classes and noun class pairings in Table 19 is based on elicited single root items; 462 single/plural pairings and 185 single class stems are represented in Table 19.¹⁴ The final two columns indicate the number of pairings that occurred in Paterson (2012), based on data from Smith (2007); known loan words have a separate count. Some nouns (especially mass and non-count nouns) occur in an unpaired class, that is, there is no apparent singular/plural distinction.

Noun class assignment can be manipulated by speakers to adjust the meaning of a particular referring form. For example in (44), the root ṭāʔār; presumably has a meaning like ‘rock-substance’; the root may be used with various noun classes to mean ‘rock’, ‘pebble’, ‘gravel’, ‘boulder’, or ‘foundation stones’ (Paterson 2012: 231).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(44)</th>
<th>ṭt-tāʔār</th>
<th>‘rocks’</th>
<th>CLASS 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i-tār</td>
<td>‘pebble’</td>
<td>CLASS DIM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋm-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘gravel, pebbles’</td>
<td>CLASS 6B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋt-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘boulder’</td>
<td>CLASS 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā-tār</td>
<td>‘boulders’</td>
<td>CLASS AUG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋs-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘foundation stones’</td>
<td>CLASS 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹⁴ The data for the study of noun class semantics were collected using the SIL Comparative African Wordlist (1700 words; Snider and Roberts 2004). Many items elicited from the wordlist were multi-morphemic and therefore showed multiple noun class marking. These forms are included in the appendix of Smith (2007) but are not counted here.
3.1.3 Structure of the Noun Phrase (NP)

A minimal NP contains just a noun root and a noun class prefix. Modified NPs vary in possible structure, as different modification structures require the modified N to either carry a class prefix or a class suffix (uniformly abbreviated as a small capital C).

(45) \[ C-N \]

A NP may contain definiteness markers (INDEF and DEF)\(^{15}\), demonstratives (DEM), associative phrases (ASSOCP), adjectives (ADJ), possessive pronouns (NP_{POSS}), and relative clauses (RELCL).\(^{16}\) Noun class agreement marking on modifiers is indicated by the abbreviation \(AG\). Figure 12 shows the distribution of class markers on N and modifiers of N in the various structures; the final column contains examples of each modifier type with the class 4 noun ʂ-s-far ‘C4-shea.tree’. Examples of each modifier with a noun from each noun class are available in Smith (2007: Chapter 5).

---

\(^{15}\) The definite marker is identical to the object/focus pronoun. There is no identifiable root to the definite marker; the period in \(AG.DEF\) indicates that there is no way to separate a noun class agreement morpheme from \(DEF\).

\(^{16}\) When used as modifiers, quantifiers and numerals have nominal word structure with a noun class prefix, like all other nouns. However, the noun class used must be the same as the head noun being modified (Cf. ).
Figure 13 summarizes the order of elements within possible NP structures, where all modifiers are optional as indicated by parentheses, and are shown in paradigmatic columns. For example, a particular NP may have either a RELCL or an ASSOCP, but not both.
**INDEFINITE** marking is a two-part morpheme, i.e. a circum-morph.

**DEFINITE** marking and DEMONSTRATIVES do not co-occur with **INDEFINITE** marking.

***Relative Clauses co-occur with nothing except **INDEFINITE** marking.

Figure 13: Order of elements within the NP

### 3.1.3.1 Noun class prefixes on nouns in citation form

Ut-Ma'in noun class prefixes have either the shape of a single Vowel (V) or single Consonant (C) as presented above in Table 18. In citation form, consonantal prefixes occur with an epenthetic central vowel [ə] to form an initial VC syllable (46). In citation forms, both V and VC forms of the noun class prefixes bear a mid-tone.

(46) a. ĕɾ-kə passport
    c5-basket
    ‘basket’

b. št-kə passport
    c6-basket
    ‘baskets’

c. ū-nu passport
    c3-mouth
    ‘mouth’

d. št-nu passport
    c6-mouth
    ‘mouths’
Ongoing phonetic research (Colleen Starwalt, p.c.) suggests that there is evidence of geminate consonants in the prefixed noun class marker, e.g., (46b is phonetically [ŋkːɔɾ] and (46d) is phonetically [ŋmʊ]. See also the discussion in Chapter II §2.7.17

3.1.3.2 When nouns occur with noun class prefixes

Nouns take a noun class prefix in a number of constructions including: citation form (46); when a single noun is modified by a numeral (48) and (50); when an unmodified NP is the object of a verb (47) or is the second NP in a copular construction (Chapter VI); when a noun is a modifier of another noun in an ASSOCP (49); and when a noun is the object of prepositional phrase (50) or postpositional phrase (51).

(47) wā ūms ēr-kār
    C1.SUBJ carry C5-basket AG5-one
    ‘he carried (away) a basket’ (PS_MP 2013: 012)

(48) sē: wā ūmūs ēr-kār ēr-gān
    then C1.SUBJ carry C5-basket AG5-one
    ‘then he carried (away) one basket’ (PS_MG 2013: 017-018)

(49) geh mēn t-ê = r-ē-kār
    LOC = stomach AG6-ASSOC = C5-basket
    in the middle of the basket’ lit: ‘in the stomachs of the basket’ (PS_IY 2013: 091)

17 This supersedes McGill’s (2012:39) suggestion that Northwest Kainji languages might only have root-medial long consonants. In Smith (2007: 28-29), I analyzed these long consonants in Ut-Ma’in as sequences of consonants at morpheme boundaries. To date, my own data has shown that all long consonants are at morpheme boundaries or where there is a candidate for a historic morpheme boundary. These geminate consonants warrant further future investigation.
PP = C-N AG-Num

(50) wā wē tō ọ = t-kọr ọt-jọr
  C1.SUBJ put C6.OBJ LOC = C6-basket AG6-two
  ‘he put them in two baskets’ (PS_MG 2013: 012)

V C-N = POSTP

(51) únwā jīt = wè ārk = ē ṃ-r-kọr = nè
  C1.DEM far = C1.REL leave = FOC C5-basket = with
  ‘...that other one who left with the basket’ (PS_IY 2013: 025)

Notice that the shape of a single noun class prefix (whether C5 singular or C6 plural) varies in these data for phonological shape between VC as in (46), (48), and (51), versus just C, as in (49) and (50).

3.1.3.3 When nouns occur with noun class suffixes

Nouns occur with a noun class suffix in several NP constructions including: when a noun is modified by an adjective (52), definite marker (53), or possessive pronoun (54); when a noun is modified by a relative clause or a modified NP that includes an ASSOC (52); when an unmodified noun is the S/A of a clause (section Chapter V §5.3).

N-C A-AG

(52) nētā-ù rēk-jà wā ọ ụ-rē
  woman-C7 small-AG.C7 C1.FOC COP C3-eat
  ‘the small woman, she is eating’ (LW07 2006)

(53) wā = há-ñ = ọ bē = d-ā ḳọrk-ọt = tś
  C1.SUBJ = go-DIST = LOC place = AG5-ASSOC basket-C6 = DEF.AG6
  ‘he came to the place of those baskets’ (PS_IY 2013: 025)
Relative to determining prefixal versus suffixal distribution of the class marker, internal NP structure supersedes argument marking function. For example, an object NP will have a noun class prefix (e.g., ŋ-kr ‘c5-basket’in (48) and ŋ-r ‘c3-god’ in (54)), unless an object NP contains a modifier that triggers a noun class suffix (e.g., ŋn-ŋr = rí ‘pitifulness-c5 = 1SG.POSS ‘my pitifulness’?). This is discussed fully in Chapter V §5.3 with regard to resulting argument alignment patterns; further discussion is also in Chapter XI.

3.1.3.4 When nouns occur with no noun class affix

There are at least two situations in which a noun will not have a noun class affix. First, certain noun classes never have an overt marker for the noun word. Only the agreement patterns reveal the noun class for nominals of these classes (see Table 18).
Second, when a noun is modified by an ASSOCP, there are at least two patterns of cliticization that result in the separation of noun class marking from a noun word. The ASSOCP bears the only indication of the noun class of the head noun within the NP. In many cases the head noun occurs with no overt noun class morphology as in (57) where the associative marker, AG-ASSOC, cliticizes to the modifier noun word i.e. the C-N structure $u$-$t$t$ô$rs$ê$ in (57), leaving the head noun $k$ô$ô$ bare.

\[
[N = [AG-ASSOC = C-N]_{ASSOC}]_{NP}
\]

(57) wã = vástê ìn-$j$ô$s$ [kô$ô$ $[d$-$ \approx u$-$t$t$ô$rs$ê$]]
\text{C1.SUBJ = end} \quad \text{C5-filling} \quad \text{basket} \quad \text{C5-ASSOC = C3-third}
\text{‘He finished filling the third basket.’ (PS.IY 2013: 014)}

However, example (58), shows that the ASSOCP and the noun class prefix of the modifier noun can also cliticize rightward onto the head noun, separating the noun class prefix $t$- ‘C6’ from the modifier noun.

\[
[N = [AG-ASSOC = C \ N]_{ASSOC}]_{NP}
\]

(58) mú$ô$- $ô$-$t$ê [kwôt $[j$-$â = t \ kwôm$]]
\text{PN} \quad \text{COP-PFT} \quad \text{ring} = \text{C7-ASSOC = C6} \quad \text{wealth}
\text{‘Musa has a valuable ring.’ (lit: ring of wealth)’ (MA.IY.2013: 006)}

The ASSOCP is fully discussed in Chapter IV.

### 3.1.4 Negation of Nouns

The nominal negator $zâ$ ‘NEG’ is used within NPs to negate something about the nominal concept, as in (59) through (62). It always attaches to the left edge of a noun or
Pronoun, preceding any noun class prefix. The marker may be related to the noun ɘ̄m-zān ‘emptiness’.

(59)  
\[
zā = wà-kān  
\]
\[
\text{NEG} = \text{C1-there}  
\]
\[
\text{‘nobody ’ (lit: ‘no he/she there’; Ror, Smith 2007: 142)}  
\]

(60)  
\[
zā = ʒ-kān  
\]
\[
\text{NEG} = \text{C3-there}  
\]
\[
\text{‘nothing’ (lit: ‘no it there’; Ror, Smith 2007: 142)}  
\]

(61)  
\[
zā = t-tjān  
\]
\[
\text{NEG} = \text{C6-feather}  
\]
\[
\text{‘featherless’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 31)}  
\]

(62)  
\[
a. \ wā = t-níp  
\]
\[
\text{C1} = \text{C6-truth}  
\]
\[
\text{‘innocent person’ (lit: ‘person truth’)} (Ror, Smith 2007: 142)  
\]
\[
b. \ wā = zā = t-níp  
\]
\[
\text{C1} = \text{NEG} = \text{C6-truth}  
\]
\[
\text{‘guilty person’ (lit: ‘person no truth’)}  
\]

The form zā also serves as the negative copula (Chapter VI) and is used in two types of auxiliary constructions, described in Chapter VII §7.3.3. Although zā may be verbal in origin, synchronically zā functions as a nominal negator that creates an NP structure that can be modified by NP internal modifiers, for example by a relative clause as bracketed in (63).

\[
[[\text{NP}] = \text{REL}  
\]
\[
[[zā = kō-wān]_{\text{NP}} = à \text{ dé} fāg = d-è = mè “…..” ]_{\text{NP}}  
\]
\[
\text{NEG} = \text{every-C1} = \text{C2.REL} \quad \text{FUT call = AG5-ASSOC = 1SG.OBJ}  
\]
\[
\text{‘not everyone who will call me (“Lord, Lord”) ... ’ (MT_draft_2019: 7.21)}  
\]
3.1.5 Derivational nominalization processes

There are at least two derivational processes that result in nouns (Smith 2007: 49-50). First, Agent Nominalization is created by prefixing wá- for singular and á- for plural to the citation form of a noun. These prefixes form nouns referencing an agent closely associated with the noun lexeme (e.g., wášbôr ‘neighbor’ from wá ‘c1’ + s-bôr ‘c4-boundary’). Second, Action Nominals are formed by means of 5 noun class prefixes used with verb lexemes. The formation of these is further discussed in §3.2.3, their use in ASSOCPs is discussed in Chapter III, and their use as predicates is discussed in Chapters 6 and 7.

3.2 Adjectives

There are only eight known roots used as adjectives, presented in (64). These are considered bound roots; that is, they must occur with a noun class agreement suffix that agrees with the noun class of the modified nominal element (cf. nētā-ù rēk-jà ‘woman-C7 small-AG.C7’ in (52)). If a particular referent is not recoverable, AG3 for singular or AG6 for plural are often used as a default class marking. Other property concept meanings can be expressed by nouns in an ASSOCP (Chapter IV). Within an NP, the order is noun followed by an adjective, as in (65) where the adjective pò ‘new’ occurs.

(64)  sò  ‘good’  pús  ‘white’
     jò  ‘bad’  rim  ‘black’
     jät  ‘big’  dʒás  ‘red’
     rèk  ‘small’  pò  ‘new’
N-C  ADJ-C
(65)  bó-m  pò-mò
water-C6B  new-AG6B
‘new water’

Adjectives may also be used as predicates following the copular verb ɖ, as in (66);
this is more thoroughly discussed in §6.2.2.2.

(66)  mër  zê  bjâ-ër  rî  ɖ  jât-dê…
P.NAME  say  granary-C5  1SG.POSS  COP  big-AG5
‘Mer said, “My granary is big…”’

3.3 Verbs

The label “verb” is used for the Ut-Ma’in word category that possesses a certain set
of morphosyntactic properties when it predicates an action. Verbs are most often clause
medial, occurring between the Subject argument and any Object argument (see Chapter
V for further discussion; and §5.3 for discussion of alignment patterns and
Subject/Object properties). Verbs in basic clauses (Chapter V) are not marked for
agreement with clausal arguments, but as described in §3.2.2 pronoun arguments may
cliticize to verb words.

Verbs inflect for the category of tense (§3.2.1), by means of suffixes. The Bare
Verb form has no overt morphology; past tense is marked by a -ɔg ‘PST’ suffix; perfect
tense is marked by the -t(ɛ) ‘PRF’ suffix. Additionally, a verb may be marked with
iterative -s ‘ITR’ or causative -st ‘CAUS’. These derivational suffixes are reminiscent of
marker -ɘn ‘DIST’ and a focus marker -ɛ ‘FOC’ may also occur at the end of the verb
stem.
3.3.1. Verb suffixes

The verb word form is schematized in (67). The discussion below comments on co-occurrence restrictions, as not all optional morphemes may necessarily co-occur.

(67) \( V_{\text{root}} \rightarrow (\text{ITR})-(\text{PST})-(\text{CAUS})-(\text{DIST})-(\text{PFT})-(\text{FOC}) \)

The minimal verb word is the Bare Verb form (§3.2.1.1). Otherwise, verbs are inflected for tense in \( \text{Ut-Ma'in} \) by means of suffixes. The overt tense morphemes are paradigmatic in their meaning opposition, that is they never co-occur. However, they are not in the same position within the verb word. Table 20 shows the tense-aspect paradigm of the transitive verb \( re \) ‘eat’. An example of intransitive verb \( tfiz \) ‘descend/come down’ is shown in Table 21.

Table 20: Tense-aspect paradigm of the verb ‘eat’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB FUNCTION</th>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARE VERB</td>
<td>( rê )</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>( réːg )</td>
<td>‘ate’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST + DISTAL</td>
<td>( réːg-ên )</td>
<td>‘ate far away/ate food from far away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td>( ríːt / réːt )</td>
<td>‘has eaten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITERATIVE + PERFECT</td>
<td>( rêːs- tô )</td>
<td>‘has eaten all’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST + CAUSATIVE</td>
<td>( rêːg-ôːsː tô )</td>
<td>‘has fed’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 21: Forms of the verb ‘descend’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB FUNCTION</th>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARE VERB</td>
<td>( tfiz )</td>
<td>‘descend’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BARE VERB + DISTAL</td>
<td>( tfiz-ên )</td>
<td>‘descend from far above’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>( tfizːg [tfizːgːz] )</td>
<td>‘descended’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST + DISTAL</td>
<td>( tfizːg-ên [tfizːgːn] )</td>
<td>‘descended from far above’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSATIVE</td>
<td>( tfizːst [tfizːst] )</td>
<td>‘lower something from above’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSATIVE + DISTAL</td>
<td>( tfizːst-ên [tfizːstːn] )</td>
<td>‘lower something from far above’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSATIVE + DISTAL + PERFECT</td>
<td>( tfizːst-ên-t(ê) [tfizːstːnt] )</td>
<td>‘has lowered something from far above’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As seen by the forms in Table 20 and Table 21, the CAUSATIVE precedes the PERFECT, but follows the PAST tense morpheme. I have not encountered the sequences CAUSATIVE + PAST or PERFECT + CAUSATIVE.

3.3.1.1 Bare verb form

The most basic form of the verb in Ut-Ma'in is the Bare Verb form, made up of the verb root or derived stem with no overt tense marking (Paterson 2015). In the analysis presented here and in Paterson (2015), the Bare Verb may be said to have a null-marked discourse-dependent tense interpretation. The Bare Verb form has two major uses. First, the Bare Verb form is prevalent in narrative discourse with the function of presenting Main Event Line predications. In this context, it often has a past time reading or a perfective aspectual reading (Paterson 2015). However, in other uses, the Bare Verb can have a present or gnomic reading:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S & V & O \\
(68) & \text{nēt-ēt = īn} & \text{rē} & \text{r-gā} & \text{ō} & \text{t-tēwā = nē} \\
\text{people-C6 = 2PL.INCL.POSS} & \text{eat} & \text{C5-cooked.grain} & \text{and} & \text{C6-soup = with} \\
\text{‘Our (incl.) people eat cooked grain and soup.’}
\end{array}
\]

3.3.1.2 Past and Perfect verb forms

The PAST suffix -\text{g} ‘PST’ on a CV root triggers lengthening or copying of the root vowel. For CVC roots with a voiceless final consonant, the final consonant of the root is deleted and the /g/ occurs as [k], see (70). For a handful of roots, metathesis moves the past morpheme before the final consonant of the stem, as in tfīz + \text{g} [tʃōgāz] ‘descended’ from Table 21.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
(69) & \text{wā} & \text{rē-ō} & \text{ʃr-gā} & \text{gjāp.} \\
\text{C1.SUBJ} & \text{eat-PST} & \text{C5-cooked.grain} & \text{yesterday} \\
\text{‘He ate cooked grain.’}
\end{array}
\]
The perfect suffix -t(ê) does not co-occur with the past tense suffix. It has the form -t with CV verb roots (71), and it has the form -tê with other verb roots (72).

(71) wā ré-t nam'mrè
C1.SUBJ eat-PFT food
‘she has eaten food’ (TB_VA_Fer 2013: 032)

(72) wā dërg-tè tāʔār-ðt tō = t-bë:t
C1.SUBJ pick.up-PFT stone-C6 C6.DEF = AG6-all
‘he picked up all of the stones’ (SJ_SS_2006: 10.20.009)

3.3.1.3 Distal suffix

A Distal Marker - dàng commonly occurs on verbs to indicate that an action involved a “far away location”. Typically it attaches to the tense-inflected verb stem.

(73) wā ré-g dàng 6t-rwā
C1.SUBJ eat-PST-DIST C6-yam
‘he ate yams from somewhere far away’/‘he ate yams while he was far away from here’ (LW10_SJ_Ror 2006: 007)

With certain roots it has a ventive interpretation, as in (74) where the verb root há ‘go’ + DISTAL yields the meaning ‘come’.

(74) ē há-g dàng
C2.SUBJ go-PST-DIST
‘they came from far away.’ (GF 2007: 01:00.621-01:01.227)
3.3.1.4 Enclitics

Other meaningful bits occur on the ends of some verbs. These are analyzed as phrasal affixes or clitics, as they actually attach to the end of a clause. Subject Focus,\textsuperscript{18} Clause Dependency, and Negation are all evident in (75). Compare the clause final NEG marker in (75a) with the clause final NEG marker in (75b). In (75a) clause dependency is indicated by lengthening of the final vowel and a high tone $= [\ddot{e} + \grave{e}]$; whereas in (75b) the negative particle is only $=d\ddot{e}$. Although $=d\ddot{e}$ ‘NEG’ occurs directly adjacent to the verb in (75a), it is shown to be a clausal affix in (75b), where it attaches to the final $t\ddot{m}s\ddot{e}$ ‘also’ rather than the verb $r\ddot{e}$ ‘eat’.

(75)

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{llllll}
\text{a. } & w\ddot{a} & r\ddot{e} & = d\ddot{a} & = [\ddot{e} + \grave{e}] & \ddot{e} & \ddot{a} \\
& \text{C1.FOC} & \text{eat} & \text{NEG} & \text{FOC} & \text{DEP} & \text{friend.} \text{-C7} = \text{C1.POSS} \text{ C7} \text{ also} \\
\text{b. } & w\ddot{a} = r\ddot{e} & t\ddot{m}s\ddot{e} & = d\ddot{a} \\
& \text{C1.SUBJ} = \text{eat} & \text{also} & \text{NEG} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

‘(When) he, did not eat, his friend, he, also, he, also did not eat.’

(EH_VA_Fer 2013: 018-019)

I describe the use of Action Nominalizations as predicates within Auxiliary Constructions in Chapters VII and IX. A sample of some of these is included in Table 22 for comparison with the forms of the verb $r\ddot{e}$ ‘eat’ in Table 20. These forms serve as predicates, but have morphological patterns that come historically from nominal structures, not the verbal patterns seen for verb words in this section.

\textsuperscript{18} Subject focus, encliticizes to the verb or to the negative marker, is often used in conjunction with a focus pronoun. In (75) the pronoun $w\ddot{a}$ ‘C1.FOC’ is identical in form to the class 1 object pronoun (§3.4).
Table 22: Additional forms of ‘eat’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION</th>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>ṭt-rē</td>
<td>‘will eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE AUX CXN</td>
<td>dē = rē = dā</td>
<td>‘will eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE NEGATIVE AUX CXN</td>
<td>zā rē = dā... dā</td>
<td>‘will not eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRESSIVE AUX CXN</td>
<td>ẓ = rē = dā</td>
<td>‘is eating’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PROGRESSIVE AUX CXN</td>
<td>ẓgā = rē = dā</td>
<td>‘was eating’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēkō AUX CXN</td>
<td>tēkō = rē = dā</td>
<td>‘is in the middle of eating’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēntō AUX CXN</td>
<td>ẓ = mēn = tō = t-rē</td>
<td>‘is eating’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All attested verb suffix co-occurrence sequences are schematized in Figure 14.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB FUNCTION</th>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARE VERB</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTAL</td>
<td>V-₅n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSATIVE + DISTAL</td>
<td>V-st-₅n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>V-₂g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST + DISTAL</td>
<td>V-₂g-₅n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST + CAUSATIVE</td>
<td>V-₂g-st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td>V-t(ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT + DISTAL</td>
<td>V-t-₅n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITERATIVE + PERFECT</td>
<td>V-s-t(ē)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUSATIVE + DISTAL + PERFECT</td>
<td>V-st-₅n-t(ē)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 14: Attested verb suffix co-occurrences in Ut-Ma'in
3.2.2 (Nascent) argument indexation

If a full noun NP occurs as a subject or object there is no argument indexation on the verb. This is, for instance, the case in (76).

(76) kɔ̀-yʃ-hɛ nɔ = yá kɔ̀-t ɔt-tɔ
    every-C7-there bird = C7.DEF put-PRF C6-ear
    ‘Every bird there listened’ (GF_IT_Jiir 2007: 018)

However, if a pronoun occurs as a subject or object, there are some instances of cliticization to the verb in fast speech, but these cliticized pronouns are easily separated from the verb in slow speech or repetition tasks. This is not agreement, as these cliticized pronouns are the only indication of the argument in the particular clause.

(77) ɛ = há:-g-ŋ
    C2.SUBJ = go-PST-DIST
    ‘they (all the birds) came from far’ (GF_IT_Jiir 2007: 018)

(78) nā = nɛ = wá = tɔ
    INDEF.SUBJ = give = C1.OBJ = C6.OBJ
    ‘He was given them.’ (lit: ‘They give him them (sweet potatoes’).
    (KB_IY_Ror_2013: 004)

3.2.3 Action Nominals

All verbs can have a nominalized form expressing an action.19 In this section we survey the form and uses of Action Nominals.

19 Agent nominalization is described in §2.1.5. To express locations or instruments related to some activity, a nominalized V may be used as the modifying NP in an Associative Construction in phrases meaning ‘place of activity’ (an example is included in (82)) or ‘thing of activity’. See discussion of Associative Construction semantics in Chapter III.
Nominalization is accomplished by means of simply placing noun class markers on verb roots. Action Nominals have been found in five of the fourteen noun classes, as shown in Table 23. Of the 349 action nominals presented in Smith (2007), 241 are in class 6, with the remainder distributed among four other noun classes. (It is interesting to note that noun class markers that do not function as nominalizers are used either for human/animate categorization i.e., classes 1, 2 and 7, or for specific size categorization, i.e. classes DIM and AUG.)

Table 23: Noun class forms for Ùt-Ma'in Action Nominals (Smith 2007; Paterson 2012)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Noun Affixes</th>
<th>Agreement Pronouns</th>
<th># Nouns in 2007 wordlist</th>
<th># Action Nominals in 2007 wordlist</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ü-</td>
<td>ọ́</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>ù-swá́t ‘fasting’; ù-hùw ‘stealing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>əs-</td>
<td>sè́</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>s-s-dò́róg ‘thinking’; s-s-fà́g ‘calling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ər-</td>
<td>ðé</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>ər-fà́tù ‘sliding’; ər-çà́g ‘losing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ət-</td>
<td>tɔ́</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>ət-mjà́g ‘twisting’; ət-dès’t picking up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6M</td>
<td>əm-</td>
<td>mɔ́</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>əm-hò́g ‘hearing’; əm-zà́p ‘shivering’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Út-Ma’in Action Nominals may be used as the arguments of finite verbs, as in (79) where ət- ‘to hoe’\(^{20}\) occurs with a noun class 5 prefix referring to the activity of hoeing. This Action Nominal then serves as the object of the verb nák ‘knew’.

(79) wən nák ər-tɔ́m sók
3SG.SUBJ know.PST C5-hoe(v.) well

‘He knew hoeing well.’

---

\(^{20}\) Although the English translation ‘hoe’ is ambiguous, the root ət- indicates the action hoe (v). I have included (v.) in the English gloss of ər-tɔ́m to help differentiate action from implement and to make clear that this is a nominalized verb.
In (80), the verb root *hɛ́* ‘fall’ serves as the head of a modified NP, which is the object of the main verb *hjáŋ* ‘saw’. Compare that to *hɛ́* ‘fall’ in (81), where it serves as the main verb of the clause and is marked for past tense.

(80) ｗɘ̄n　 hján-g　 hɛ́:　 d-ə = t-túr
3SG.SUBJ  see-PST  fall  AG5-ASSOC = C6-pot
‘He/she saw the falling of the pots’ (LW11 2006: 004)

(81)  jā  hɛ̄- = :g  δ-mé  dù  d-ə = m-bɘ̄
C7.SUBJ  fall-PST  LOC-inside  well  AG5-ASSOC = C6B-water
‘it (a lizard) fell inside the well of water.’ 21 (Primer 2009:73)

Within the ASSOCCXN, Action Nominals may be used as modifiers of other nouns. In (82) *ʃɘ̄ʔɘ̄t* ‘C5-sitting’ is used as the modifier of the head noun ‘place’.

(82)  bē  t-ə = r  ʃɘ̄ʔɘ̄t  δ  mɘ̄n  ū-tát
place  AG6-ASSOC = C5  sit  COP  stomach  C3-many
‘Places for sitting are many within (the banquet hall).’ (GL 2008: c14 v22)

Action Nominals may be used as adverbial modifiers to entire clauses. In (83) the nominalized verb *ɘ̄t-rɘ̄* ‘C6-eating’ gives added detail about the event of leaving, that is “they left while at the same time eating (fruit).” The interpretation here must be that the Action Nominal has the same subject as the main verb of the clause.

(83)  ë  ərɘ̄k  ɘ̄t-rɘ̄
C2.SUBJ  leave  C6-eat
‘They left eating’ (IT_PS_Jiir_2013:48)

---

21 The text from this primer is converted from the practical orthography to the IPA-based writing system used in this paper.
In summary, a verb root is nominalized by means of one of five noun class prefixes, after which Action Nominals may serve as an argument of a main clause verb, modifier of another noun, or as an adverbial modifier of an entire clause.

3.4 Other word categories exhibiting noun-like structures and behaviors

3.4.1 Numerals

Numerals exhibit some noun-like structures and behaviors. In counting, numerals 1 to 10 have no affixation (Smith 2007: 69). However, when used within a NP or in reference to an already established NP, numerals show agreement with the noun class of the head noun or the noun referent, and display this agreement as a prefix. The agreement prefixes mimic the noun class prefixes themselves (e.g., \(5r-k\acute{o}r\) \(5r-g\acute{a}n\) ‘c5-basket AG5-one’ in (85) versus \(t-k\acute{\text{o}}r\) \(t-f\dot{\text{\text{\`a}}r\) ‘c6-basket AG6-two’ in (86). Numerals above 10 combine two numeral roots by means of the high-tone conjunction \(5\) ‘and’.

\(^{22}\) It is not immediately clear why the class marker shifts from class 5 to class 6, or word form changes between a stem with CVCCV structure versus a stem with CVCVC structure; the form represented here is faithful to this particular speaker/text: the two forms are \(5r-k\dot{\text{\text{\`a}}r}\) ‘c5-picking’ and \(5t-k\dot{\text{\text{\`a}}r}\) ‘c6-picking’. The change in order of the final two segments of the two forms is deliberate and as produced by the speaker.
The numeral šr-ʃīk ‘C5-twenty’ displays a noun class prefix and is pluralized in higher, more complex numerals by means of the plural class 6 prefix št-, as seen in (87).

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{C-N} & \text{AG-Num} \\
\hline
\text{(85)} & \text{a. šr-kɔ́r} & \text{šr-gàn} \\
& \text{C5-basket} & \text{AG5-one} \\
& \text{‘one basket’} \\
\text{C-N} & \text{AG-Num} \\
\text{(86)} & \text{b. št-kɔ́r} & \text{št-jɔ́r} \\
& \text{C6-basket} & \text{AG6-two} \\
& \text{‘two baskets’} \\
\text{C-Num} & & \\
\text{(87)} & \text{a. šr-ʃīk} & \\
& \text{C5-twenty} & \text{‘twenty’} \\
\text{C-N} & \text{AG-Num} \\
& \text{b. št-ʃīk} & \text{št-jɔ́r} \\
& \text{C6-twenty} & \text{AG5-two} \\
& \text{‘fourty’} \text{ (lit: ‘two twenies’)} \\
\end{array}
\]

The lexeme bēt ‘all’ is considered a numeral because it follows the agreement pattern of numerals, by taking the agreement marker as a prefix in the form identical to the noun class prefix. In (88) bēt ‘all’ occurs with the prefix ū- ‘C3-’ in agreement with the referent ū-bù ‘C3-house’. It is not that all of the water fell, rather the entire house fell.\(^{23}\)

\[
\begin{array}{llllll}
\text{bō-mɔ́} & \text{gɔ́p} & \text{ū-bù} & \text{hɛmɔ̀ssə} & \text{ū-bēt} \\
\text{water-C6B.SUBJ} & \text{hit} & \text{C3-house} & \text{fall.PRF} & \text{C3u-whole} \\
& \text{‘water hit the house having fallen completely’ (Smith 2007: 74)} \\
\end{array}
\]

\(^{23}\) This appears to be an adverbial use of the quantifier bēt ‘all’ and it is translated accordingly as ‘completely’; however, the agreement is clearly with the noun referent ū-bù ‘C3-house’.
Contrast the class 3 marking of ē-bēt ‘C3-whole’ with the class 6 marking in (89) below, t-bēt ‘C6-all’. The prefix on bēt ‘all’ always matches the noun class of the head noun.

(89) wā fāk nēt-tō tō t-bēt
   C1.SUBJ call.PST person-C6 C6.DEF C6-all
   ‘He called all of the people.’ (GK 2013)

### 3.4.2 Quantifiers

Quantifiers are distinct from numerals because they do not show agreement with the noun being modified; they are also distinct from regular nouns because they do not require the associative marker when they modify a noun. I present only two examples here, as I have only encountered two examples with this morphosyntactic pattern.

The quantifier ū-tāt ‘C3-many’ has a constant noun class prefix from class 3. In (90), ū-tāt is the predicate following the copular verb ē. It does not agree with the noun class of the noun it is describing. If the quantifier were behaving as a numeral, one would expect it to occur with class 6 agreement after the copula (see §6.2.1.4).

(90) [dīmt = t-ē nō] ?ē [ū-tāt] ē = t-māʔrɔ̀r
    name = C6-ASSOC bird COP C3-many LOC = C6-PN
    ‘Names of birds are many in Üt-Ma'RoR (variety of Üt-Ma'in)’ (MM_2017:209)

(91) ŕt-hō ū-tāt
    C6-days C3-many
    ‘many days’

The other known quantifier with this behavior is tfājī ‘few’, as shown in (92).

(92) ŕt-hō tfājī
    C6-days few
    ‘a few days’
I predict that there are more forms that behave this way, but further investigation is needed.

3.4.3 Nominal clausal modifiers

Certain nominals occur clause finally to add additional meaning to the entire clause. For example, nouns that indicate time may be used to specify the day of the event profiled by a particular clause as in (93).

(93) 䁌m děti t-rē u-sōt
1SG.SUBJ FUT.OBL C6-eat C3-tomorrow
‘I must eat tomorrow’

These “adverbial” nominals follow NP morphosyntactic patterns and have inherent class designations. They may also occur clause initially. As an example of NP structure (94) begins with a definite NP dă-ŭ = ぞ ‘time-C3 = C3.DEF’ with the meaning ‘now’ (literally, ‘that time’), where ‘now’ is establishing the a tense interpretation relative to the entire clause.

(94) ㄔdă-ŭ = ぞ ㄖǎndī-m-ぞ ぞ ㄔfūn-ŭ = rí
time-C3 = C3.DEF spider.web-C6M-SUBJ COP road-C7 = 1SG.POSS
‘Now, spider web is my road.’ (FSC.IT_Juur_2007:20)

The noun ŭ-dă ‘C3-time’ has developed a second specialized meaning to introduce adverbial dependent clauses. In (95) it occurs in the form dă with the meaning ‘when’.

(95) ㄔdă 䁌m té-n = ㄔdăk-ぞ ㄔzär = ㄔdă
time 1SG arrive-DIST = DEP land-C3.SUBJ NEG.COP.EXT = NEG
‘When I arrived, there was no land.’ (SFC.IT_Juur_2005: 32)
3.5 Pronouns, determiners and demonstratives

Pronouns in Ut-Ma'in may occur as arguments of a verb or may to refer to a possessor within an NP when the referent is known. Table 24 displays the pronoun system in Ut-Ma'in organized by the following criteria:

i. **TYPE**: personal pronouns and class marked pronouns

ii. **PERSON**: first, second, or third person

iii. **NUMBER**: singular and plural, inclusive versus exclusive

iv. **FUNCTION**: subject, object, and possessive

Table 24: Pronoun paradigm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUBJ</td>
<td>OBJ</td>
<td>POSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ūm</td>
<td>mé</td>
<td>rī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b5</td>
<td>rō</td>
<td>nō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>wān</td>
<td>rō</td>
<td>ūn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nā ‘NSPEC’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c1</td>
<td>ū/wā</td>
<td>ū/wā</td>
<td>wā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c2</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c3</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c4</td>
<td>dē</td>
<td>dē</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c6B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cDIM</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Personal possessive pronouns are distinct segmentally and tonally for singular forms. They occur after the modified N. The N itself occurs with a noun class suffix; this is demonstrated for the first person possessive pronoun rī in (96).
Definite markers are formally identical to the object form of noun class agreement pronouns. When used to indicate definiteness within the NP, they occur after the noun which itself occurs with a noun class suffix which parallels the structure seen for personal possessive pronouns, as in (98).

(96)  
\[ \text{mēr zā bjá-r=rl } \text{5 } \text{já-t-dē} \]
\[ \text{PN say barn-c5 = 1SG.POSS COP big-c5} \]

‘Mer said, “My barn is big.” ’ (Primer 2009)

Demonstratives are marked for agreement with the head noun, shown for class 7 as shown in (98). The noun occurs with the same suffixed class marking as the DEF marker.

(97)  
\[ \text{dā-ù déʔé } \text{ødà tfāmpā nētā-ù=jā} \]
\[ \text{time-c3 travel GOAL husband woman-c7=C7.DEF} \]

‘Then he went to the woman’s husband.’ (GK_IT_Ror_2013:9-10)

Table 25 displays the various noun class marked forms of the demonstratives. Segmentally the class-marked suffix of each demonstrative is formally identical to the class-marked pronoun. The tonal pattern is HL. The demonstrative is a [Vn] sequence to which the class agreement is circumfixed for classes 4, 5, and 6; only the suffix is used for 1, 2, 3, and 7. The initial V harmonizes to the roundness feature of the vowel within the class marker suffix. For class 6B the nasal is pronounced with the labial place of articulation of the \( m \)-class marker.
Table 25: Class marked Demonstratives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>DEMONSTRATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c1</td>
<td>ìn-wà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c2</td>
<td>ìn-è</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c3</td>
<td>ùn-ð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c4</td>
<td>s-ìn-sè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c5</td>
<td>d-ìn-dè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c6</td>
<td>t-ùn-tò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c6B</td>
<td>m-ùm-mò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c7</td>
<td>ìn-jà</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER IV
THE ASSOCIATIVE CONSTRUCTION

4.1 Introduction

In this chapter, I discuss a subsection of NP morphosyntax in order to help the reader understand the complexities of NP structures that are used by the auxiliary constructions discussed in Chapters 7 and 9.

In order to use a noun to modify another noun within a single NP, Uṯ-Ma’in uses what I call an Associative Phrase (ASSOC). Example (99) shows a simple Associative Construction (ASSOCXN) where the head ‘ring’ is modified by a bracketed ASSOC containing the dependent noun ‘wealth’. In (100) the bracketed dependent is itself a modified NP ‘the baskets’. In both cases, the second NP is modifying the first NP.

(99) kwát = [j-ð = t kwɔm]  
ring = AG7-ASSOC = C6 wealth  
‘ring of wealth’

(100) bɛ = [d-ð kɔr-ɔt = tɔ]  
place = AG5-ASSOC basket-C6 = C6.DEF  
‘place of the baskets’

Note that the modifying second NP is a fully expandable NP that can have the full range of modifiers that any NP may have. It may even include a nested ASSOC as shown in (101) and (102). Whne nested, the agreement on the Associative Marker will agree with the noun class of the NP it is modifying. An NP that contains an ASSOC can also contain other modifiers, as shown in (103), where the final definite marker agrees with the class 6 noun that is the head/first noun of the ASSOCXN, and not with the
second/modifying noun. Contrast this with the definite marker in (100), where the
definite marker agrees with the noun class of the second/modifying noun.

(101) fàr   s-ð = m    wár
    shea.butter.trees AG4-ASSOC = C6B   length
    ‘shea butter trees of length/ tall shea butter trees’

(102) fàr = s-ð   rān = t-ð    m-wár
    shea.butter.trees = AG4-ASSOC   leaves = C6-ASSOC   C6B-length
    ‘shea butter trees of leaves of length/ long-leaved shea butter trees’

(103) jà = [t-ð = s-té] = tó
    fruit = [AG6-ASSOC = C4-tree] = C6.DEF
    ‘those fruits of trees’

The term “associative” was used by Welmers (1963: 432; 1973: 275) to describe a
morpheme in widespread use throughout Niger-Congo languages; the function is the
association of some modifying phrase to a head noun. The modifying phrase is headed
by the associative morpheme that is marked for noun class agreement with the head
noun. Other terms for this construction within descriptions of Niger-Congo languages
include “possessive”, “genitive” (Welmers 1963), “connective,” and “connexive”
(specifically for Bantu languages; Van de Velde 2013: 217). Ut-Ma’in uses the
associative for a broad range of functions, and even extends its use to the formation of
relative clauses (cf. Chapter XI). Ut-Ma’in uses a separate construction for possessive
NPs, as shown in (104) with a full NP and in (105) with a possessive pronoun; (106)
provides the same stem as head NP in an ASSOCNX for comparison to the possessive.

(104) kúr-ðt    nētā-û = jā
    rooms-C6    woman-C7 = AG7.DEF
    ‘that woman’s rooms’
(105) kúr-ɔt = rí
rooms-C6 = 1SG.POSS
‘my rooms’

(106) kúr t-ɔ = m rōg
rooms AG6-ASSOC = C6B sleeping
‘bedrooms/rooms of sleeping’

The Ūt-Ma’in ASSOC CXN parallels Van de Velde’s (2013: 246-247) description of what he calls the Bantu connective construction:

i. two nominal constituents are in a relation of dependency
ii. the dependent nominal follows the head nominal
iii. the dependent nominal is marked by a dedicated connective relator (Ūt-Ma’in ASSOC), which agrees with the head nominal
iv. the connective construction is not only dedicated to the expression of possession, nor to any other [particular] relation

In §4.2, I survey the morphosyntax and the noun class/agreement morphology of the Ūt-Ma’in ASSOC CXN and explore the range of semantics communicated when the modified head is a typical noun like ‘rock’ or ‘goat’. When an Action Nominal like ‘singing’ or ‘branding’ is the head of an ASSOC CXN, there is shift in some noun class agreement patterns and a shift in the range of semantic relationships the ASSOC allows.

If the head is an action nominal formed from a transitive root, the erstwhile object will occur in the ASSOCP (i.e. structurally as if it were a modifier of the action nominal) (§4.4). In transitive auxiliary constructions, any overt objects are also encoded in an ASSOCP. Section §4.5 introduces these phenomena though they are more fully explored in Chapters VII and IX.
4.2 Form of the ASSOCCXN

The Ut-Ma’in Associative Marker is a low-tone, marked for agreement with the head noun of the ASSOCCXN.\textsuperscript{24} At this point it may be helpful to more explicitly define four particular terms, and provide an example of each taken from (107):

- **ASSOCIATIVE MARKER (ASSOC):** a low-tone, often supported by a mid-central vowel, e.g., \( \ddot{\text{\textSigma}} \) ‘ASSOC’

- **ASSOCIATIVE COMPLEX (ASSOC):** the ASSOCIATIVE MARKER plus any class marking that cliticizes to it, e.g., \( t-\ddot{\text{\textSigma}} = m \ ‘AG6-ASSOC = C6M’ \)

- **ASSOCIATIVE PHRASE (ASSOC):** the ASSOCIATIVE COMPLEX and the modifier (N\textsubscript{MOD}) which follows, e.g., \( t-\ddot{\text{\textSigma}} = m \ w\ddot{\text{\textSigma}}r \ ‘AG6-ASSOC-C6M length’ \)

- **ASSOCIATIVE CONSTRUCTION (ASSOCXN):** essentially an NP that contains an ASSOC, e.g., \( \text{r\text{\textSigma}n} t-\ddot{\text{\textSigma}} = m \ w\ddot{\text{\textSigma}}r \ ‘\text{leaf AG6-ASSOC = C6M length}, ‘\text{leaves of length’} \)

In each instance of the associative in the examples which follow, the N HEAD and N MODIFIER (MOD) and related morphology are labeled. \( AG_{\text{HEAD}} \) indicates the agreement prefix corresponding to the noun class of the head noun. \( C_{\text{MOD}} \) indicates the class prefix of the N modifier. Equal signs “ = ” indicate clitic boundaries in the pronunciation of the particular utterance. In (107) and (108), the citation form of the two nouns in the ASSOCCXN are given after the translation.

\textsuperscript{24} Welmers (1963: 446) claims that some Niger-Congo languages have a tonal associative morpheme, but he does not name any of those languages.
In the ASSOCCxN, the noun class of the head noun is only apparent via an agreement prefix on the Associative Marker.\textsuperscript{25} Examples (107) and (108) illustrate instances of the ASSOCCxN functioning as the subjects of main verbs. In these examples, the same root \textit{rān} ‘leaf’ occurs as the head noun of the subject phrase. The exact meaning of a phrase with the root \textit{rān} (whether ‘long leaves’ versus ‘leaves having been cooked in soup’) can only be interpreted from the noun class that is marked by the agreement prefix on the ASSOCp.

The ASSOCCs in (107) and (108) are spoken as separate phonological words, characteristic of careful speech. Sometimes, the cliticizes to the head noun root (109), separating the class marker of the modifier noun from the modifier noun root. In (109)

\begin{verbatim}
[\text{N}_{\text{HEAD}} \ [\text{[AG}_{\text{HEAD}} \text{-ASSOC} = \text{C}_{\text{MOD}}]_{\text{ASSOC}} \ N_{\text{MOD}}]_{\text{ASSOC}}]_{\text{ASSOC}} \ V
\end{verbatim}

(107) \[\text{rān} \ t-\text{ā} = \text{m} \ wār] \ hē\text{ː}g \text{ fall.PST} \]

‘long leaves fell’ (lit: ‘leaves of length fell’)
(citation: \(\text{ā-t-rān} ‘\text{c6-leaf’/‘leaves’ and m-wār ‘\text{c6M-length’}‘})

(108) \[\text{rān} \ s-\text{ā} = s \ tʃwā] \ hē\text{ː}g \text{ fall.PST} \]

‘leaves from soup fell’ (lit: ‘leaves of soup fell’)
(citation: \(\text{s-s-rān} ‘\text{c4-leaf’/‘cooked leaves’ and s-tʃwā ‘\text{c4-soup’}‘})

\textsuperscript{25} Recall from Table 18 in Chapter III that noun class marking and agreement marking for certain classes have distinct forms; therefore, I maintain a terminological distinction between agreement marking (glossed as \textit{AG} with a noun class label, e.g., \textit{d} ‘\text{AG5}‘) and noun class marking on a noun (glossed as \textit{C} with a noun class label, e.g., \textit{r} ‘\text{c5}‘). In the Associative complex, both an agreement affix and a noun class affix occur: agreement marking is prefixed to the Associative marker (identifying the noun class of the head noun); while the enclitic on the Associative marker is the inherent noun class marker of the modifying noun.
the noun class 7 agreement prefix is consonantal, but the noun class marker of the
modifier noun is the vowel ु, bearing the low tone of the associative marker.

(109) a. wà-kêñ nêţ wâ wô gâgôn
   C1-there person C1.DEF C1.REL married
   [N\_HEAD[[ = AG\_HEAD\^ASSOC = C\_MOD\_ASSOC] N\_MOD\_ASSOC\_P] ASSOC\_C\_XN

b. nêţâ= j- ु ibô
   woman = AG7- ASSOC = C1 Igbo.person
   ‘...a certain person who married an Igbo woman...’

However, the ASSOC may also cliticize to another element of the NP, as in (110).

My very earliest wordlist-transcriptions in 2006 contained many ASSOC\_XNS. At the
time the items were transcribed as single phonological words. A sample of these is
included in (111) through (115). There is variation in pronunciation from speaker to
speaker and even between utterances by the same speaker.

(110) wâ = vâstê mî-jës [kâr [d- ` = u-têtêrsê]]
   C1.SUBJ = end C5-filling basket C5-ASSOC = C3-third
   ‘he finished filling the third basket’ (PS\_IY\_Ror 2013: 014)

(111) rêmâtmêñ ‘stomachache’
   rè = m-ô = t-mên
   pain = AG6B-ASSOC = C6-abdomen
   ‘pain of abdomen’

(112) ǐsônà ‘ankle’
   ǐs = d- ` = u-ná
   eye = AG5-ASSOC = C3-leg
   ‘eye of leg’
(113) \textit{rēmḗr̥} ‘headache’
\begin{align*}
\text{rē} &= m-\delta = r-hí \\
\text{pain} &= \text{AG6B-ASSOC} = \text{C5-head} \\
\text{‘pain of head’}
\end{align*}

(114) \textit{jādarfā́mpá} ‘boy’
\begin{align*}
\text{jā} &= d-\delta = r-tjāmpá \\
\text{offspring} &= \text{AG5-ASSOC} = \text{C5-man} \\
\text{‘offspring of male’}
\end{align*}

(115) \textit{tfā́mjā́tkṓm} ‘hammer’
\begin{align*}
\text{tjā́m} &= j-\delta = t-kṓm \\
\text{anvil} &= \text{AG7-ASSOC} = \text{C6-hand} \\
\text{‘anvil of hands’}
\end{align*}

Table 26: Attested forms of the ASSOCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF HEAD NOUN</th>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF DEPENDENT (ie., ASSOCIATED) NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26 presents all attested class combinations in the ASSOCC found in Ut-Ma’in

\texttt{NOUN + NOUN ASSOCCXNS}. All blank cells in Table 26 involve a \texttt{C1} or \texttt{C2} noun and indicate that an ASSOCCXN has not been encountered for that combination of classes in
the spontaneous data available. Pronominal possession is indicated by a separate construction, and this may be why exclusively human-referent C1 nouns are rarely used in the modifying position within the ASSOCXN. Table 25 displays the morphological/segmental components of the ASSOC; it does not indicate whether the complex stands alone phonologically as a well-formed word; sometimes ASSOCs cliticize to one of the noun roots, as seen in various examples in this chapter.

Note that the dependent modifier NP may be more complex than a single noun root, as seen in (116). The modifier NP is definite and there is no class prefix on the modifier noun. In this construction, the noun class of the modifier noun is suffixed to the noun.

(116) wā = há-ā = ʂ bē = d-ŋ kór-ŧ = t̚
C1.SUBJ = go-DIST = LOC place = AG5-ASSOC basket-C6 = DEF.AG6
‘He came to the place of those baskets’ (PS_IY_Ror_2013: 025)

Figure 15 schematizes the ASSOCXN; here MOD indicates any modification relationship. In the next section, we turn to the semantic range of the modification relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Associative Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Head</strong> [ AssocP ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIMPLE MODIFIER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPLEX MODIFIER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 15: ASSOCXN with noun head
4.3 Function of ASSOCCXNs

The Ut-Ma'in ASSOCCXN exhibits a range of semantic relationships between the head noun and the modifying noun including:

i. part-whole: dependent represents ‘whole’
ii. material: head is made of material expressed by dependent
iii. contents: head contains dependent
iv. place of origin: head originates from dependent
v. place of use: head is used at place expressed by dependent
vi. time of use: head is used at time expressed by dependent
vii. function: head is used for function/activity expressed by dependent
viii. property concept: dependent expresses a property of head
ix. ordinal number: dependent expresses ordering of head
x. idiomatic: metaphorical meaning results from head + dependent

Examples of each semantic relationship are given in Table 27 and a more extensive list is included in Appendix F.

-------------------

26 Not a cardinal number. For example, the phrase ‘three baskets’ requires the structure of the numeral phrase described in Table 27. The ordinal expression ‘third basket’ uses the associative construction presented here.
Table 27: Semantic relationship in ASSOCXNs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION OF MODIFIER</th>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(part)whole</td>
<td>kéŋ = j-بلاغ r-swà = j-s-nk</td>
<td>'bridge of nose' lit: 'frontier of nose'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zwàr = d-` = u-ʃəd</td>
<td>'beauty of face'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swà = d-` = u-rwág</td>
<td>'elephant’s trunk’ lit: ‘nose of elephant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>material</td>
<td>jòn = ብ = r-rwàb</td>
<td>'bed made of clay’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rén = d-ʒ = m-dáp</td>
<td>'trap made of sap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contents</td>
<td>dù = d-ʒ = m-bō</td>
<td>'well of water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place of origin</td>
<td>nětá j-` = u-либо</td>
<td>'Igbo woman’ lit: woman of Igbo-land’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place of use</td>
<td>nɔm = d-ʒ = r-hí</td>
<td>'hat’ lit: ‘thing of head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time of use</td>
<td>rë = t-ʒ = m-rím</td>
<td>'evening meal’ lit: ‘eating of darkness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
<td>bë t-ʒ = r-fṣʔt</td>
<td>'places of sitting’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kwàt = j-ʒ = t kwàm</td>
<td>'ring of wealth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property</td>
<td>bɔ m-ʒ = t-_METHOD</td>
<td>'old water’ lit: ‘water of old’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fàr s-ʒ = m wàr</td>
<td>'tall shea-butter trees’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lit: ‘shea-butter trees of length’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal number</td>
<td>kɔ̀r d-` = u-tʃtsɛ̀</td>
<td>'third basket’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idiomastic</td>
<td>kán = s-ʒ = kst</td>
<td>'dawn’ lit: ‘crying of chickens/roosters’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bɔ m-ʒ = t-ràn</td>
<td>'green’ lit: ‘water of leaves’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.4 ASSOCXNs with action nominal as head

Action nominals may be the head of an ASSOCXN. In example (117), the verb root \( vək \) ‘greet’ serves as the head of the NP \( vək səs ət \) ‘greeting of old’. The NP containing the ASSOCXN serves as the subject argument of the main clause. We know the phrase containing \( vək \) ‘greet’ is nominal because there is class agreement marking that occurs on the ASSOCX that follows it. The structure of the ASSOCXN is identical to the structures shown in §4.2 for noun heads. The dependent noun here is expressing the property concept of ‘old’ parallel to the function included in §4.3.
The goal argument of an action nominal may be coded by the ASSOCP. In (118) we see the verb root *ha* ‘go’ followed by a goal complement. The ASSOCP is prefixed by the class 6M agreement form *m-* which cliticizes to the goal complement ‘market’. The entire nominal phrase *hā m-* `u-tūlê* ‘going ASSOC market’ is the object of the main verb *zēŋtê ‘prepare.PRF’.*

\[
\begin{array}{llllllllll}
\text{VHEAD} & \text{[AGHEAD ASSOC = CMOD ASSOC = NMOD ASSOC CN]}
\end{array}
\]

(118)  
\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{tʃəmpáj} & \text{zēŋtê} & \text{[hā m- `u-tūlê]}
\end{array}
\]

man.C7.SUBJ prepare.PRF [go AG6M-ASSOC-C3-market]  
‘The man prepared to/for going to market.’ (Lit. ‘The man prepared market-going.’) (citation: əm-hā ‘C6m-going’ and ā- tôlê ‘C3-market’)

In contrast to (118), example (119) shows how a goal argument is expressed within a locative phrase when *ha* ‘go’ is a finite main verb in a clause.²⁷

(119)  
\[
\begin{array}{llllllllll}
\text{hēb-št = ri} & \text{[hā-ig} & \delta = tūlê = ` = u & \text{māhūtā]}
\end{array}
\]

friend-C6 = 1SG.POSS [go-PST LOC = market = ASSOC = C3 Mahuta.town]  
‘My friend went to Mahuta’s market’

With action nominals, an object must be coded by the ASSOCP. In the NP in (120), the head noun is an action nominal *nām ‘doing’; it is shown with the notional object *rēn ‘trap’ of the root ‘do’. The ASSOCC *dēt ‘AG5.ASSOC.C6’ occurs between the two nouns.

²⁷ Note that the class 3 noun *tūlê ‘market’ is unmodified in (118) but is itself modified by an associative phrase in (119). The location of this inherent class marker depends on the NP structure (Smith 2007; §1.1.3.1.3). Vowel quality and tone is also different between these two utterances of ‘market’, [ə] in (118) and [ui] in (119). The difference in tone may be caused by a phonetically down-stepped H tone following the H of the preceding locative.
Table 28 shows all the noun class combinations that can grammatically occur in the ASSOCC when the head noun is an action nominal. This is necessarily a subset of the forms from Table 26 in §4.2, since only five noun classes participate in nominalization of verbs (§3.2.3). Shaded cells indicate attested combinations in the data available. The white cells indicate forms I expect but which are not attested in the text corpus used for this study.

Table 28: ASSOCC forms expected with nominalized verb head

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF HEAD</th>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF SECOND NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>O-=O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>s-=O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>d-=O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>t-=O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>m-=O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In summary, the ASSOC\text{C\text{X\text{N}}} is used to “associate” the meaning of a modifier NP to a head noun. If the head noun is an action nominal, the association can be between the head noun and a modifier similar to the types discussed in §4.3, a goal-object complement (118) or a patient-object complement (119). These functions are summarized in Figure 16.
4.5 ASSOC CXNs in transitive auxiliary constructions

In all known transitive auxiliary verb constructions, the main lexical verb is in a nominalized form (Chapter VII and Chapter IX). However, the only indication of the nominal status of the nominalized verb is the associative agreement marking that is required with the object of the ertshile now-nominalized verb. The object of the nominalized verb must be coded within an ASSOC P. Auxiliary verb predication constructions are fully discussed in Chapters VI and VII. The purpose here is to demonstrate that the ASSOC CXN is the source of affixes in the transitive auxiliary constructions. For example, in (121) the future obligation auxiliary détɛ ‘FUT.OBL’ requires a nominal complement. The nominal complement is an ASSOC CXN with the action nominal rɛ ‘eat’ as the head. The object of ‘eat’ is within the ASSOC P that is marked for agreement with the noun class of the head action nominal, i.e., ɛɛ ‘AG6’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Nominal Head</th>
<th>[ AssocP ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| N
| HEAD | [AGHEAD\-ASSOC = C
| MOD
| N
| MOD ] |
| V
| NMLZ
| HEAD | [AGHEAD\-ASSOC = C
| MOD
| N
| MOD ] |
| V
| NMLZ
| HEAD | [AGHEAD\-ASSOC = CGOAL |
| N
| GOAL ] |
| V
| NMLZ
| HEAD | [AGHEAD\-ASSOC = CPATIENT |
| N
| PATIENT ] |

Figure 16: ASSOC CXNs with N
| HEAD vs. V
| NMLZ
| HEAD as head

\[ \text{Figure 16: ASSOC CXNs with N}_{\text{HEAD}} \text{ vs. V}_{\text{NMLZ:HEAD}} \text{ as head} \]

Class 4 agreement is shown in the transitive past progressive auxiliary construction in (122) for the action nominal ɛs-vɛk ‘c4-greet’. Again, the only indication of the nominal status of the V
| HEAD is the class 4 agreement marking required for the object. In contrast
the syntactically intransitive past progressive auxiliary construction in (123) is marked as nominal by the nominalizing class 4 prefix s-. Theses change in marking related to transitivity are discussed thoroughly in Chapter VI.

\[
\begin{array}{llllll}
S & AUX & V_{HEAD} & AG-ASSOC = P & [V_{HEAD} & [\{AG_{HEAD^{\text{ASSOC}}} = C_{OBJ}\}_{\text{ASSOC}} = N_{OBJ}\}_{\text{ASSOC}}]_{\text{ASSOC}}
\end{array}
\]

(122) ɘm stdboolas vək s-ʌ = u-nēŋēn
1SG.SUBJ PROG-PST greet AG4-ASSOC = C7-old.man
‘I was greeting the old man.’

(123) ɘm stdboolas s-vək
1SG.SUBJ PROG-PST C4-greet
‘I was greeting.’

When a ditransitive verb is used in an auxiliary construction, the associative marker often cliticizes to the nominalized verb; the two object arguments follow in the order R(ECIPIENT) then T(HEME). This is the same as the constituent order in basic clauses. Example (124) demonstrates the verb njā ‘give’, which has a nominalized class 5 citation form of ɘr-njā ‘C5-give’. The associative occurs immediately following the main lexical verb, which is shown to be nominalized by the occurrence of class 5 agreement on the associative.

\[
\begin{array}{llllll}
S & AUXV-TNS & V = AG-ASSOC & R & T
\end{array}
\]

(124) ɘm stdboolas njā = d-d
wən ɘr-gā
1SG.SUBJ PROG-PST give = AG5-ASSOC 3SG.OBJ C5-cooked.grain
‘I was giving him cooked grain.’

There is some variation in agreement marking of ASSOCCXNS within auxiliary constructions. In (125), class 5 agreement marking occurs on the associative following the nominalized lexical verb gēn ‘cross-plant’. However, the verb has a nominalized
class 6 citation form ȍt-gèn ‘C6-cross.plant’. Class 6  t- agreement marking on the associative was rejected by my consultant for (126). I include this here to foreshadow the grammaticalization of some action-nominal headed ASSOCXNs within auxiliary constructions, which are more fully discussed in Chapter VI.

(125) сим δ = гён d-d = Ø-hjо δ = мё ü-tåk
1SG.SUBJ PROG = cross.planted C5-ASSOC = C2-guinea.corn LOC = INSIDE C3-field
‘I cross-planted guinea corn in a field.’ (SJ_Ror_2017:83)

(126) *сим ȍgèn þhjo ñmё ütåk
‘I cross-planted guinea corn in a field.’ (SJ_Ror_2017:83)

For the transitive progressive auxiliary construction specifically, the attested forms of the ASSOCC are reduced to allowing only two agreement prefixes. An action nominal in class 4 requires class 4 agreement on the ASSOCP that contains the object. An action nominal nominalized by any other noun class (C3, C5, C6, C6B) and used in a transitive progressive auxiliary construction, require class 5 agreement on the ASSOCP that contains the notional object. The allowed reduced set of ASSOCCs is shown as shaded in Figure 17. The white cells present the forms that can grammatically occur when the head of an associative is an action nominal (cf. Table 28 in §4.4) to highlight the shift in forms in the transitive progressive construction. The reduced set of forms is evidence of more advanced grammaticalization in the transitive progressive construction and is fully discussed in Chapter VII.

28 Cross-planting involves adding a second crop, in rows perpendicular to those of an already planted field.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Class of Head</th>
<th>Noun Class of Dependent Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ø- <code> = u Ø-=</code> = s Ø-=<code> = r Ø-=</code> = t Ø-=<code>= m Ø-</code> - u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>s- <code> = u s-=</code> = s s-=<code> = r s-=</code> = t s-=<code>= m s-</code> - u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>d- <code> = u d-=</code> = s d-=<code> = r d-=</code> = t d-=<code>= m d-</code> - u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>t- <code> = u t-=</code> = s t-=<code> = r t-=</code> = t t-=<code>= m t-</code> - u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>m- <code> = u m-=</code> = s m-=<code> = r m-=</code> = t m-=<code>= m m-</code> - u</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 17: ASSOCC forms attested with Action nominal lexical head in the intransitive progressive (all cells) and the transitive progressive (shaded cells) auxiliary constructions

The expected AG3, AG6, and AG6B are not attested in the progressive.
CHAPTER V
BASIC VERBAL PREDICATION

In order to understand the involvement of nominalization within many Ut-Ma’in predicates, I first describe the most basic clauses which do not involve nominalization. Section 5.1 presents basic constituent order of transitive, intransitive, and ditransitive clauses that have only a single verbal element that expresses the main lexical predicate of the clause. Section 5.2 presents alternates to basic order related to putting a particular argument in the clause-initial focus position. Section 5.3 presents alignment patterns found in the data related to noun class marking on nouns and NPs and pronoun form for both personal pronouns and class-marked pronouns. Section 5.4 presents the basic clause negation strategy, which uses a clause final negator clitic. Section 5.5 describes the passive-like strategy of impersonal constructions and completes the chapter.

5.1 Basic clause constructions

In order to describe the order of constituents in Ut-Ma’in, I use the following abbreviations: S stands for the single argument of an intransitive verb; A for the most AGENT-LIKE argument of a transitive verb; and P for the most PATIENT-LIKE argument of a transitive verb (Croft 1990; Haspelmath 2011). For ditransitive clauses, R refers to the RECIPIENT argument and T refers to a THEME argument of a ditransitive verb (Croft 1990 and Dryer 1996). The prevalent constituent order in Ut-Ma’in is SV in intransitive clauses (127), and AVP in transitive clauses (128). A ditransitive basic clause has AVRT constituent order (129). Basic clauses minimally require a V(erb) and its S(ingle)
argument. Basic clauses are distinguished from more complex constructions by their use of one and only one V that contains the main lexical predicate of the clause.

\[
\text{S} \quad \text{V}
\]

(127) \( \text{wā mār-g} \) \( \text{(gjāp)} \)
\( \text{C1 die-PST} \) yesterday

‘He died (yesterday).’

\[
\text{A} \quad \text{V} \quad \text{P}
\]

(128) a. \( \text{nā hā-g ū-gwār} \)
\( \text{NPERS kill-PST C7-goat} \)

‘Someone killed the goat.’

b. \( \text{nā hā-g já} \)
\( \text{NPERS kill-PST C7} \)

‘Someone killed it.’

\[
\text{A} \quad \text{V} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{T}
\]

(129) \( \text{tʃāmpā-jō} \) \( \text{njā-g} \) \( \text{wān} \) \( \text{ʒr-gā} \)
\( \text{man-C7 give-PST 3SG.OBJ C5-cooked.grain} \)

‘A man gave him food.’

P, R and T object arguments of transitive and ditransitive verbs can be omitted if context allows the listener to retrieve the relevant argument, it is a “definite null” in the sense of Fillmore (1986). On the whole, verbs in Ut-Ma’in on the whole are quite flexible in terms of syntactic transitivity. Throughout this study, I use the shorthand INTR to indicate that a clause is syntactically intransitive, i.e., there is no expressed object, regardless of whether the identity of an understood argument can be retrieved contextually. If I intend to discuss the semantic intransitivity, I state that explicitly. Similarly, I use TRAN as shorthand for syntactically transitive, i.e, there is an overtly expressed object. In basic verbal predication constructions certain verbs require an overt expressed object or as mentioned above an “definite null”. However, when we turn to auxiliary constructions (in Chapters VII through X) many semantically transitive verb roots no longer require the expressed or retrievable object when in nominalized form
(cf. the discussion of transitivity in basic auxiliary constructions in §7.3.1). That is, nominalization could be viewed as having an (optional) syntactic ditransitivizing effect.

In fast speech, pronominal S/A arguments may cliticize to the left side of non-nominalized verb. Less frequently, pronominal P, R and T arguments cliticize to the right side of the verb. These cliticized pronouns always occur in the same order as NP equivalents within the phrase. The equal sign “=” indicates a clitic boundary, as in (130). The order SV may be expressed as S = V for intransitive; AVP as A = V = P for transitive; and AVRT as A = V = R = T for ditransitive.

\[
A = V = R = T
\]

(130)  nā = njē = wā = tō:

INDEF.SUBJ = give = C1.OBJ = C6.OBJ

‘He was given them.’ (lit: ‘They give him them [sweet potatoes]’).

(KB_IY_Ror_2013: 004)

These cliticized pronouns do not occur if a non-pronoun NP is used as an argument. In (131), the R argument is cliticized to the V, but the A and T arguments have no indexation on the V.

\[
A \quad V = R \quad T
\]

(131)  rḕ-sā njāː-g = wā zwarte = d- `u-fō
god-C3.SUBJ give-PST = C1.OBJ beauty = AG5-ASSOC-C3-face

‘God gave him a handsome face.’ (YM_IY_Ror_2013: 008)

5.2 Focus Constructions

Clause initial position is used to draw attention or emphasis to a particular argument of a verb. Both subject and object NP arguments occur in the fronted focus position. With subject focus, the verb is also marked with the suffix -ē ‘FOC’. In (132),
subject focus is achieved by placing the NP *nēt-t tɔ́ ‘those people’ prior to the subject pronoun, *tɔ́.

A_{FOC} A V P
(132) a. *nēt-t tɔ́, ə = tɔ́ hjān-ɛː nɔm = d-ɔ́ = r-hi dɛ, people-C6 = C6.DEF COND = C6.SUBJ see-FOC thing = AG5-ASSOC = C5-head C5.DEF
b. sɛ̆ = ɛ̆ fɔ̆g wɔ̥n ɔ̆s-kɛr then = C2.SUBJ call 3SG C4-whistle
‘Those people, when they saw the hat, then they call him whistling.’
(PS_PS_Ror_2013: 027)

When a pronoun is used in clause-initial focus position, a high-tone form of the pronoun occurs. This high-tone form is identical to the “object pronoun”, but with reference to the “subject” (S/A) of the clause > The particular pronouns are *ū ‘C1.FOC’ in (133) and *mɛ́ ‘1SG.FOC’ in (134). When the pronoun is 1SG, the mid-tone subject pronoun is not allowed to co-occur with the focus-marked verb, as shown in (135).

S_{FOC} V-ɛ
(133) ú jɔ̃n-ɛ̆: hɔ̥gɔ̀mɛ́? C1.SUBJ rise.up-FOC ashamed
‘Only he leaves ashamed.’ (GK_IY_Ror_2013: 084)

A_{FOC} V-ɛ P
(134) mɛ́ hjān-ɛ́ ɔ́ 1SG.FOC see = FOC C3.OBJ
‘I am the only one who saw it.’ (SJ_BB_Ror_2013: 039)
(lit: Me saw it.)

(135) * əm hjānɛ́ ɔ́

Objects (P, R, or T) may occur in the clause initial focus position to bring emphasis to a particular object argument as in (136); the verb does not have focus marking when an object is the focused constituent. In (136), the final vowel cliticized to the verb stem is a cliticized R argument pronoun, not the subject focus marker.
5.3 Argument alignment patterns

Ut-Ma'in constituent order reflects a Nominative/Accusative alignment (Plank 1979; Nichols 1992); that is, S and A arguments pattern together and typically occur before V; and P arguments occur after V.

However, Ut-Ma'in has two distinct alignment patterns based on the form and complexity of the NP structure of the argument: Nominative/Accusative alignment and Neutral alignment, schematized in as in Figure 18. The bullet points under each alignment type refer to the type of argument to which the pattern applies, e.g., noun class marked pronouns have Nominative/Accusative alignment; S and A pronominal arguments have a mid-tone subject form and P pronominal arguments have a high-tone form, cf. §5.3.5.

Figure 18: Alignment Patterns in Ut Ma’in
NPs demonstrate two clausal alignment patterns: clauses have neutral alignment of modified NPs and clauses have nominative/accusative alignment for unmodified NPs. Modified NPs have at least one modifier in addition to the noun head; the modifier may be a Demonstrative, Definite Marker, adjective, etc. Unmodified NPs have only a head Noun and obligatory noun class morphology, but no additional modifiers. Synchronously, S/A unmodified NPs occur with noun class suffixes and P argument unmodified NPs occur with noun class prefixes. This may be accidental case development, possibly from a reanalyzed relative clause structure (see discussion in Chapter XI).

Pronouns divide into two groups as well. Nominative/Accusative alignment is exhibited by 1SG pronouns and third person class-marked pronouns. First person pronouns are distinguished by both segmental content and tone, ūn ‘1SG.SUBJ’ and mē ‘1SG.OBJ’. The class marked pronouns are distinguished by tone only, for example tɔ ‘C6.SUBJ’ versus tɔ ‘C6.OBJ’. Neutral alignment is exhibited by non-1SG human referent pronouns that are outside of the class marked pronoun system: ūn ‘1PL.INCL’, ɬt ‘1PL.EXCL’, bɔ ‘2SG’, nɔ ‘2PL’, wɔn ‘3SG’, ɔn ‘3PL’, and the non-specified pronoun nā ‘NSPEC’.

The following subsections describe each of the alignment situations in more detail.

5.3.1 Neutral alignment of modified NPs

The structure of the bracketed NPs in (137) through (139) is identical, though they serve distinct grammatical functions. The word order of the NP relative to the verb alone serves to identify the syntactic role of each argument.
(137)  
a. wā ñè?è  
\[ C1.\text{SUBJ} \quad \text{fell} \]  
b. bá = wá ñè?è  
\[ \text{after} = C1.\text{FOC} \quad \text{fell} \]  
\[ \begin{array}{c} S \quad V \\ \text{c. } [jà = t-ð = s-té = t5] \quad äzgāsè \end{array} \]  
\[ \text{fruit} = C6.-\text{ASSOC} = C4.-\text{tree} = C6.-\text{DEF} \quad \text{roll.out} \]  
‘He fell. After he fell, those fruit rolled out.’  
(SJ_PS_Ror_2013: 028)  

A  V  P  
(138)  
\[ [jà = t-ð = s-té = t5] \quad jàmð \quad t-mónðré \]  
\[ \text{fruit} = C6.-\text{ASSOC} = C4.-\text{tree} = C6.-\text{DEF} \quad \text{resemble} \quad C6.-\text{mango.fruit} \]  
‘Those fruits resemble mangoes.’  
(SJ_PS_Ror_2013: 048)  

A = V  P  
(139)  
\[ ě = kár-g-ðs: \quad [jà = t-ð = s-té = t5] \]  
\[ C2.\text{SUBJ} = \text{pick-PST-ITR} \quad \text{fruit} = C6.-\text{ASSOC} = C4.-\text{tree} = C6.-\text{DEF} \]  
‘They gathered those fruits.’  
(SJ_PS_Ror_2013: 030)  

5.3.2 Nominative/Accusative alignment: unmodified NPs  

The structures of the bracketed NPs in (143) and (144) are distinct from each other in regards to the location of the noun class marking. These examples are taken from the same text and the reference is to the same discourse-world referent. The word order and the noun class marking serve to identify the syntactic role of each argument.  

Unmodified subject NPs occur with suffixed noun class marking as in (140) and (141), the nominative; unmodified object NPs occur with prefixed noun class marking as in (142), the accusative. The different order and forms of the C7 class marker in (140) through (142) could be interpreted as a kind of “case marking”, since the same lexical item has a different form depending on whether it is in subject (S/A) or object (P) role.
Examples (143) through (144) show a partial pattern for noun class 6; I do not have an example with ‘mangos’ as an A argument.

S-NOM
(140) sē käti-jō rwēn ər-vāstē
then guinea.fowl-C7.SUBJ exit C5-last
‘Then a guinea fowl exited last.’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 071)

A-NOM
(141) kōnā käti-jō zō-tē... ər-kjät ər-kjät ər-kjät
there guinea.fowl-C7 say-PFT C5-difficult C5-difficult C5-difficult
‘There a guinea fowl has said, “Difficult, difficult, difficult”’
(GF_IT_Juur_2007:093&095)

ACC-P
(142) a. á=b hjān ū-kāt,
COND = 2SG see C7-guinea.fowl,
b. zwā-r=wa rwō-t-śān ə=hō-r=dē
beauty-C5 = C1.POSS exits-PFT-DIST LOC = day-C5 = C5.DEF
‘If you see a guinea fowl, his beauty has exited long ago from that day’
(GF_IT_Juur_2007: 047-048)

S-NOM
(143) [māngōr-ō] āzgō-si-tē
mango.fruit-C6.SUBJ pour-ITR-PFT
‘Mango fruit rolled out (of the basket).’ (PS_PS_Ror_2013:018)

ACC-P
(144) wā kā-in [ōt-māngōr]
C1.SUBJ pluck-DIST C6-mango.fruit
‘He picked mango fruits’ (PS_PS_Ror_2013: 004)

5.3.3 Nominative/Accusative alignment: 1SG personal pronouns

Nominative/Accusative alignment is attested for first person singular pronouns; subject pronoun is ūm ‘1SG.SUBJ’ and the object pronoun is mé ‘1SG.OBJ’ as shown in
(145) and (146). That is S and A are aligned in the form ë̄ₘ, and P is distinct in the form mē. The argument role of a 1SG pronoun is distinguished by three criteria.

i. word order: The subject pronoun always precedes V; the object pronoun follows V, unless fronted to the clause initial focus position;

ii. segmental content: There are instances of ë̄ₘ ‘1SG.SBJ’ shortening to =ₘ which cliticizes to the preceding clausal element (147), but the object form mē is never shortened and always has the distinct front vowel [ɛ];

iii. tonal content: The subject form (ë̄ₘ)ₘ is consistently mid-tone; the object form mē is consistently high-tone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A_{NOM}</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ë̄ₘ</td>
<td>hján</td>
<td>ë̄ₘ:m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1SG.SUBJ  see  C6.thing  LOC = inside
‘I see things inside’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>P_{ACC}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nā</td>
<td>gjín</td>
<td>mē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NSPEC  hate  1SG.OBJ  LOC = emptiness
‘They hate me outside.’ (SFC_IT_Juur 2005:L24)

because = S_{NOM}  V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A = V = R_{ACC}</th>
<th>T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rémë = zë = m</td>
<td>hō:-t = ët</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word = say = 1SG  go-PFT = C6  remembering  LOC = 2SG = with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘...because I always remember you.” ’ (MA_IY_Ror 2013: 011)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A = V = R_{ACC}</th>
<th>T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bë = nōm = mē</td>
<td>ë̄ₘ-ség = m-ð</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2SG = do = 1SG.OBJ  C6B-loan = C6B-ASSOC  ring-C7 DEM-C7
‘“... you loan me that ring...” (lit: ‘you do me a loan of that ring’) (MA_IY_2013: 010)
5.3.4 Neutral alignment: personal pronouns (not 1SG)

Neutral alignment is observed for the personal pronouns in '1PL.INCL', it '1PL.EXCL, bō '2SG', nō '2PL', wān '3SG', ūn '3PL', and nā 'NSPEC'. Examples (149), (150), and (151) show the form bō '2SG' used for A, R, and P arguments; each instance is bolded and labeled for the argument role. Note that example (151) has two clauses and bō '2sg' occurs twice; bō '2SG' is the A argument of the first verb ū ‘COP’ and the P argument of the second verb mō-t: ‘make-PFT’. Word order alone serves to identify the syntactic role of each argument.

A
(149) bō = nōm = mé  ūm-ség = m-ū kwāt-ū ìn-jā
2SG = do = 1SG.OBJ  C6B-loan = C6B-ASSOC  ring-C7 DEM-C7
‘ “... you loan me that ring...” (lit: ‘you do me loaning of that ring’)
(MA_IY_2013: 010)

R
(150) rū-ū čá-g bō ʔ-tʃān = dā
god-c3 give-PST 2SG  C6-feather = NEG
‘creator did not give you feathers’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 029)

A  V  A  V  P
(151) bō  ā  ūkā  rū-ū  mō-t:  bō  zā = t-tʃān  ū = r-ṭakān
2SG  COP  like  god-c3  build-PFT  2SG  NEG = C6-feather  LOC = C5-beginning
‘you are like creator made you featherless in the beginning’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 30-31)

S  V
(152) ìn-jā  nō = čā bō  há:n-ē
DEM-C7 bird = C7.DEF  2SG  go-DIST-FOC
‘This bird, you come.’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 087)
5.3.5 Nominative/Accusative alignment: CLASS MARKED pronouns

Nominative/Accusative alignment is attested for all class marked pronouns; subject pronouns are mid-tone and object pronouns are high-tone. The argument role of class marked pronouns is distinguished by two criteria:

i. word order: The subject pronoun always precedes V; the object pronoun follows V, unless fronted to the clause initial focus position.

ii. tonal content: The subject form is consistently mid-tone; the object form is consistently high-tone.

The class 1 pronoun occurs as the mid-tone S argument wā in (153) and as the high-tone the R argument wā in (154). The class 6 pronoun occurs as the mid-tone A argument tɔ in (155) and as the high-tone T argument tɔ in (154) and high-tone P argument tɔ in (156).

\[ S_{NOM} \]
\[ (153) \quad wā \quad már-g \quad (gjāp) \]
\[ C1.3SG.SUBJ \quad die-PST \quad yesterday \]
\[ \text{‘He died (yesterday).’} \]

\[ R_{ACC} \quad T_{ACC} \]
\[ (154) \quad nā = njē = wā = tɔ; \]
\[ \text{INDEF-give-C1.OBJ-C6.OBJ} \]
\[ \text{‘He was given them.’ (lit: ‘They give him them (sweet potatoes’).} \]
\[ (KB_IY_Ror_2013: 004) \]

\[ A_{NOM} \]
\[ (155) \quad nēt-t tɔ, \quad ā = tɔ \quad hjān-ɛ \quad nām = d-ɛ = r-hī \quad dē, \]
\[ \text{people-C6 = C6.DEF} \quad \text{COND = C6.SBJ see-FOC thing = AG5-ASSOC = C5-head C5.DEF} \]
\[ \text{‘Those people, when they saw the hat, ....’ (PS_PS_2013: 027)} \]
(156) a. wəná hjáné ə = ís-ər ró à
  who.Q see LOC = eye-C5 = 2SG.POSS Q

P_{ACC}

b. kò wárə tọ nā wárə wən = nə
  or tell C6.OBJ NSPEC tell 3SG = with

‘Did you see it with your eyes? or tell(ing) it with having been told?’
(GK_IY_Ror_2013)

The class 2 pronoun occurs as the mid-tone S argument ¨ in (157), mid-tone A argument ¨ in (158), and as the high-tone P argument ¨ in (159).

S_{NOM}

(157) əʔ = ərək
  C2.SUBJ = leave
  ‘They left.’ (SJ_PS_2013: 044)

A_{NOM}

(158) ə nóm əs-tə:g
  C2.SUBJ do C4-prayer
  ‘They prayed’ (PW_IT_2013: 019)

P_{ACC}

(159) ụ hjén jáːg-ə = ə ụ hjén-s ụ
  C1.SUBJ see children-C2 = C2.DEF C1.SUBJ see-ITR C2.OBJ
  ‘She sees the children; she sees them regularly.’ (PW_IY_Ror_2013: 093-094)

5.3.6 Object alignment

Based solely on word order, P and R arguments occur immediately after the verb; P and T arguments occur clause finally. Thus, word order in basic clauses can be considered neutral. In Chapter VI, however, we see that auxiliary constructions show a primary/secondary object pattern marked by the use of an associative construction (cf. §7.3.1.3). In a primary/secondary object pattern, P and R are marked distinctly from T, demonstrated in Figure 19 (Dryer 1986: 814; 2007: 256).
5.4 Negative Basic Clause Construction

Negation of basic clauses is achieved by use of the clause negator enclitic = *da* ‘NEG’. The tone of the negative enclitic varies from utterance to utterance.

Transcriptions are marked for the tone that occurs in each example.

(160) ñm nák = *dá*
1SG.SUBJ know.PST = NEG
‘I do not know.’

(161) nóm-g-è = *dá*
do-PST-FOC = NEG
‘It’s impossible.’

(162) rë+jà-g bõ |-tjàn = *dá*
god-C3 give-PST 2SG C6-feather NEG
‘creator did not give you feathers’ (GF_IT_2007: 29)

(163) wá rè = *dá*, ābókì-ù = wā jā tōmš, wā = rè tōmš = *dá*
c1.OBJ eat = NEG friend-c7 = c1.POSS C7 also c1.SUBJ = eat also = NEG
‘He did not eat. His friend, he also. He also did not eat.’

The negation in (164) cannot mean ‘I know the place we must not meet’.

(164) ñm nāk [bë = d-ò īʔ dët; nóm d-ò = t ōrōm] = *dá*
1SG.SUBJ know place-c5-REL 2PL.SUBJ FUT.OBL do C5-ASSOC = C6 meeting = NEG
‘I did not know the place where we must meet.’ (Minna_SJ_2013: 7-8)
5.5 Impersonal Constructions

5.5.1 Passive-like impersonal construction

To avoid mention of the agent/subject, the passive-like Út-Ma'in impersonal construction can be used (Payne 1997: 206ff; Creissels 2011: 302). The verb has no morphological indication of passive, rather the non-personal, non-referential subject pronoun uzzer is used. It can be translated as 3PL ‘they’ or 3SG ‘someone’, but it does not reference directly anyone posited as existing in the discourse. In example (165) the context allows for the interpretation of the agent as the ‘other birds’ mentioned by name in preceding clauses. However, this is a de-emphasis of the known agent in a commentary phrase by the narrator. The narrator could easily have used a class 2 referent subject pronoun ħū referring to a long list of just mentioned birds, as is done 20 seconds earlier in the same text, (166).

(165) nā jāsū wān ā-tjān ā-gān
     NSPEC give 3SG C7-feather C7-one
     ‘they gave him one feather’
     ‘he was given one feather’ (GF 2007: 01:25.708-01:27.118)

(166) ... ħā-g-ḡn
     C2.SUBJ come-PST-DIST
     ‘(kwarug birds, gamsraga birds, …and kuut birds…) they came from far away.’
     (GF 2007: 01:00.621-01:01.227)

The Út-Ma'in uzzer impersonal construction is akin to the non-promotional passive in C’Lela (Dettweiler 2015: 120-121). Dettweiler mentions that an alternate interpretation of the C’Lela uzzer impersonal is first person plural inclusive, whereas the Út-Ma'in uzzer
impersonal pronoun has a third person plural interpretation. The Ut-Ma'in inclusive first person plural form is *īn* ‘1PL.INCL’ in contrast to *īt* ‘1PL.EXCL’ (Smith 2007:79).

### 5.5.2 Presentational Impersonal Construction

A specialized use of the *nā* impersonal constructions involves a formulaic way of introducing characters and settings in narrative texts. In this presentative construction (Hengeveld 1992: 118; Creissels 2013: 16), the *nā* impersonal pronoun occurs as the subject of the verb *nām*-*g* ‘do-PST’ sometimes shortened as *nāy* ‘did’; this verb must be in past tense, bolded in examples (167) through (171). The introduced element, underlined in examples (167) through (171), occurs as the P object of the verb. The NP containing the introduced element is often in the indefinite construction.

(167) a. nā  *nōj*  dà-₃ = dîm  ɘm-rā

\[\text{NSPEC do.PST time-ASSOC = back C6B-far}\]

‘There was a time far back.’

b. dà-₃ = š  đàk-ₓ  zār = dá

\[\text{time-C3 = C3.DEF land-C3.SUBJ NEG.COP.EXT = NEG}\]

‘that time, there was no land.’

c. nā  *nōj*  ēkēn  nām̀hāg = ē  tōt

\[\text{NSPEC do.PST c2.some living.things = C2 three}\]

‘There were three living creatures.’

d. ē  nām-greSQL  i-nān  i = ` = s-rēm

\[\text{C2.SUBJ do-PST CDIM-argument AGDIM = ASSOC = C4-talking}\]

‘They did a debate...’

e. ɘm-ꜜ wābā  m-hā-₃n  š = đàk-ù  ún₉

\[\text{saying first.one C6B-go-DIST LOC = land-C3 DEM.C3}\]

‘saying who was the first to come to this land.’ (SFC_IT_Jiir_2007: 001-004)

In (167), a ‘time far back’ is introduced as a major topic of the following narrative.

None of the events in the main event line of the narrative take place in that ‘time far
back’, rather the ‘time far back’ is the topic of debate within the narrative. The major characters ‘three living creatures’ are also introduced using a second presentative construction in (167c).

In the Fer and Jiir dialects, the pronoun ā can be used instead of nā in clauses introducing characters, as in (168).

(168) ā ṉóŋ wàkën fàršk=wā
dosp C1.certain king = C1
‘There was a certain king...’ (KO_MI_Fer_2013: 003)

(169) a. ā ṉóŋ ū-dà δ = dīm
dosp C3-time LOC = back
‘There was a time far back,

b. nō-Ø nón Ńën=d=ì=dìm
bird-C2 do.PST invitation = AG5-ASSOC = C4-dance
‘Birds made an invitation for dancing’ (GF_IT_Jiir_2007: 004-005)

(170) a. nā ṉóŋ wàkën zwār=wā
dosp C1.certain young.man = C1
‘There was a certain young man,’

b. δ=d-kōn τās=δ
LOC = C3-certain village = C3
‘in a certain village’

c. wā = ?s sō-jā
c1.SUBJ = COP good-AG7
‘He is handsome,’

d. wā ràtē jīk=dá
C1.SUBJ NEG.have money = NEG
‘(but) he does not have money.’ (YM_IY_Ror_2013: 001-004)
(171) a. nā nóm-ŋg jākān nētā = jā
NSPEC do-PST C7.certain woman = C7
‘There was a woman’

b. ñkān bō ɘ
LOC C3.certain town C3
in a certain town.’

c. nētā-ù = jā gōt tjāmpā-ù = wā ɘs-hī = nē ɘr-hī dá
woman-C7 = DEF.C7 look husband-C7 = C1.POSS C4-hair = with C5-head NEG
‘The woman had no respect for her husband.’
lit: The woman didn’t look at her husband (like a) head with hair’

d. nētā-ù = jā kōb ɘt-mēn
woman-C7 = DEF.C7 receive C7-pregnancy
‘The woman got pregnant.’ (SR_SJ_Ror_2013: 001-003)
CHAPTER VI

NONVERBAL, EXISTENTIAL, AND POSSESSIVE PREDICATION

In this chapter I explore the function and form of nonverbal predication constructions that are distinct from basic verbal predication described in Chapter V. First, the main semantic component of each predicate is nonverbal (following Hengeveld 1992: 27). That is, the main lexical predicate is not an Ut-Ma'in verb as defined in §3.3. This need not mean that there is no verbal element, rather that any verb that may be present is a COPULA. The copula exists only to support the nonverbal lexical predicate element (Stassen 1997: 97) or to indicate to the listener “that the nucleus of the predicate is a nonverbal element” (Overall et al 2018: 02). Second, those clauses that require a copula in the affirmative require a negation strategy that is distinct from that found in basic clauses (§5.4). The fact that they have a shared negation strategy unifies clear copular constructions (see §6.2.3) with existential and possessive constructions. For this reason, existential (§6.2.5) and possessive (§6.2.4) predication are discussed within this chapter.

In Ut-Ma'in there are two nonverbal predicate macro-constructions: the Juxtaposed NP construction and the Copular construction, schematized in Figure 20. PRED in Figure 20 represents a range of morphosyntactic structures including: NPs, adjectives, prepositional phrases, postpositional phrases, and quantifier/numeral phrases.

![Figure 20: Schematic of nonverbal macro-constructions](image)

114
In the juxtaposed NP constructions a NP serves as predicate, employing a “zero copula” (Stassen 1997: 62), shown as a null Ø in Figure 20. The second NP is often a pronoun that agrees in noun class with the first NP. These Juxtaposed NP constructions are used for functions of identification/equation and categorization/proper inclusion (Overall et al 2018: 6 and Payne 1997: 111). They are restricted to affirmative present tense interpretations or gnomic interpretations (Stassen 1997: 110). There are no attested instances of 1st or 2nd person pronouns, suggesting that these structures are only available for 3rd person (Stassen 1997: 107).

In the copular constructions NPs, adjectives, quantifiers, and adpositional phrases serve as the lexical portion of predicates, shown as PRED in Figure 20. Copular constructions have a much wider range of functions including: a second identification/equation construction, attribution of a property, and establishing location, §6.2. When the copular constructions are compared with basic verbal predication clauses (see Chapter V), one sees that the Ut-Ma’in copula ɔ́ occurs in the same morphosyntactic slot as verbs. Like regular verbs, the copula may be marked for tense with the PST suffix -ːg. Stassen (1997:91ff) considers an element like ɔ́ to be a “verbal copula” since the copula ɔ́ can take a verbal suffix.29 Specific forms of the copula are used for the verbal element in existential and possessive constructions: ɔ́tɛ́ ‘COP.POSS’ and ɔ́rɔ́ ‘COP.EXIST’. All copulas are shown in Table 29.

29 I am not speculating on the origin of the copular verb, rather only observe that the synchronic copula is “verbal”. Also, there is no evidence that the copulas can be nominalized.
**Table 29: Forms of the Ḫt-Ma'in copula**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th></th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṣ’</td>
<td>‘COP’</td>
<td>zá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5ró</td>
<td>‘COP.EXIST’</td>
<td>zár</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5t(é)</td>
<td>‘COP.POSS’</td>
<td>zá:t(é)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 30 compares the Ḫt-Ma'in patterns to typologies in Overall et al (2018: 6ff) and Payne (1997: 111ff), including the typical (apparently universal) word category associated with each function following Overall et al (2018: 6). Both typologies include Existential and Possessive in their discussion of nonverbal predication, and we will see that these functions are also apparent in Ḫt-Ma'in. All Ḫt-Ma'in nonverbal constructions that have an NP predicate are shaded in Table 30. For each NP predicate a subscript indicates the functional interpretation of a NP. For example, an NP<sub>LOC</sub> is a NP that can be understood to be a location like ū-bù ‘c3-house’. When used in a copula construction it is the semantic properties of the noun that provide the range of functions covered by the typologies. NP<sub>EQUIV</sub> is an NP that can be interpreted as the equivalent of the NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> of the clause; NP<sub>ATTR</sub> is an NP that can be interpreted as a property concept describing the NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> of the clause. ADJ stands for adjective; NUM stands for numeral; QUANT stands for quantifier, PREPP for prepostitional phrase; POSTP for postpositional phrase.
Table 30: Utc-Ma’in non-verbal predicate constructions relative to Typologies of functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Categorization</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>Proper Inclusion</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification</td>
<td></td>
<td>Equative</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent &amp; Temporary Properties</td>
<td></td>
<td>Attributive</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possession</td>
<td>Possession</td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ/PSSR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existential</td>
<td>Existential</td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.1 Juxtaposed NP Constructions

In the Juxtaposed NP Construction (above the bold line in Table 12), two NPs occur next to each other with no intervening copula, verb, or other predicating element.

In all examples in this section, NPs will be [bracketed].

(172) [dim-ḏr = ṟ] [āvámūṟ]
name-C5 = 1SG.POSS PN
‘My name is Avamuru’

(173) [ūn-tɔ̀] [bū = tɔ́]
DEM.NEAR-C6 house = C6.DEF
‘These are the houses.’
The juxtaposed NP construction can be used for personal introduction, as in response to a request for your own name seen in (172). The NPs are equated as referring to the same entity, with the second NP considered equivalent to the first NP. These are always interpreted as indicating present time/speech time or are interpreted as holding true within another time as established in a narrative discourse. This is similar to the interpretation of the Bare Verb construction (Chapter V; see also discussion of time interpretation in narrative in Paterson (2015)).

When two NPs are juxtaposed, there can be a proper inclusion reading as shown in (173); that is, the first NP is considered a member of the set designated by the second NP, as shown in (174) and (175).

(174)  
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{[tʃampá-ú = já] } & \text{MEMBER} \\
\text{man-C7 = DEF.C7} & \text{[wá-r-tóm = wá] } \text{SET} \\
\text{’That man is a farmer.’}
\end{align*}
\]

(175)  
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{[nětá-ú = já] } & \text{MEMBER} \\
\text{woman-C7 = DEF.C7} & \text{[wá-t-kósè = wá] } \text{SET} \\
\text{’That woman is a teacher.’}
\end{align*}
\]

### 6.2 Copular Constructions

#### 6.2.1 Nominal Predicate Constructions

The Út-Ma'in Nominal Predicate Construction is composed of two NPs linked together by the copula ʃ. The copula may be marked for tense with the verbal suffix -\(g\) ‘PST’. The first NP has the morphosyntactic characteristics of the subject in verbal clauses; the second NP has the morphosyntactic characteristics of an object in verbal
clauses and has its own noun class marking independent of the subject (cf. discussion of subject and object properties in §5.3).

The Nominal Predicate Construction is used for three functions: identification (Overall et al. 2018: 4; cf. equative in Payne 1997: 114), attribution (Payne 1997: 111ff, which includes both temporary and permanent properties), and location (Overall et al. 2018: 4; Payne 1997: 111). In what follows, I illustrate these functions one at a time.

In Figure 21, subscript labels indicate the function of the NP. NP_{EQUIV} indicates a semantically “equivalent” noun in an Identification NP Predicate Construction, NP_{ATTR} indicates a noun in an Attributive NP Predicate Construction, and NP_{LOC} indicates a locative noun in the Locative NP Predicate Construction. NP_{QUANT} indicates either a Numeral NP or a Quantifier NP following the copula in a Quantifier NP Predicate construction. Any of the NP predicate elements can be fronted in a Focus NP Predicate Construction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION</th>
<th>FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IDENTIFICATION</td>
<td>NP 5-TNS  NP_{EQUIV}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTRIBUTIVE</td>
<td>NP 5-TNS  NP_{ATTR}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCATIVE</td>
<td>NP 5-TNS  NP_{LOC}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUANTIFIER</td>
<td>NP 5-TNS  NP_{QUANT}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 21: Functions of the Predicate Nominal Construction

| FOCUS NP PRED CXN  | NP_{FOC} | NP 5-TNS-ε |

Figure 22: Schematic of a Focused Predicate Nominal Construction
6.2.1.1 Identification function of the Predicate Nominal Construction

We first look at the Predicate Nominal Construction that equates the concepts expressed by two nouns or NPs. Example (176) shows a Nominal Predicate Construction used for identification. Preceding the copula \( \acute{\text{\textcircled{\text{e}}}} \) is the 3SG.SUBJ pronoun \( \text{wēn} \), following the copula is the noun \( \text{ū-dārīdāŋ} \) ‘spider’. Example (176) was elicited while discussing a folk story where Mr. Spider is a main character. In the folk story, Mr. Spider introduces himself using the focus clause in (177), which has an object form pronoun as the first NP. The clause in (176), also with the function of identification, was offered to express another character’s perspective from within the story.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{NP}_{\text{SUBJ}} & \text{COP} & \text{NP}_{\text{EQUIV}} \\
\text{wēn} & \acute{\text{\textcircled{\text{e}}}} & \text{ū-dārīdāŋ} \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \text{(176)} \)

‘He is Mr. Spider.’ (elicited)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{NP}_{\text{OBJ.FOC}} & \text{COP} & \text{NP}_{\text{EQUIV}} \\
\text{mē} & \acute{\text{\textcircled{\text{e}}}} & \text{ū-dārīdāŋ} \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \text{(177)} \)

‘Me, (I) am (Mr. Spider).’ (FSC 2007:14)

From the same folk story with Mr. Spider still speaking, the Nominal Predicate Construction in (178) equates the NP \( \text{rāndī-m-\acute{\text{\textcircled{\text{e}}}}} \) ‘\text{spider.web-C6M-SUBJ}’ with the NP \( \text{fēn-ū} = \text{rī} \) ‘my road’. This has the same basic function of identification as does the Juxtaposed NP Construction seen in 6.1.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{NP}_{\text{OBJ}} & \text{COP} & \text{NP}_{\text{EQUIV}} \\
\text{fēn-ū} = \text{rī} & \acute{\text{\textcircled{\text{e}}}} & \text{ū-dārīdāŋ} \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \text{(178)} \)

‘Now spider web is my road.’ (FSC IT 2007:20)
6.2.1.2 Attributive function of the NP Predicate Construction

To form an Attributive NP Predicate construction, one need only use a descriptive noun as the second NP, as in (179); *m-d̃iḡn ‘C6M-dirtyness’* has it’s own noun class marker and is not marked for agreement with the noun it is modifying.30

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NP</th>
<th>COP</th>
<th>NP_MOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>káʔát-őt = rí</td>
<td>RaisedButton</td>
<td>m-d̃iḡn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

shoe-C6 = 1SG.POSS COP C6M-dirtyness

‘My shoes are dirty.’ (elicited_DY_2017)

6.2.1.3 Locative NP Predicate Construction

To form a NP Predicate Construction with a locative interpretation, one need only use a noun expressing a semantic location following the copula ő. In (180), the noun ū-bù ‘C3-house’ is interpreted as the location of the speaker. This clause was provided as an explanation of one’s own location when, for example, asking via phone where a person is currently located; that is, the listener would not have visual reference to the speaker’s location.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ũ-bù</td>
<td>RaisedButton</td>
<td>C3-house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘I am at home.’ (elicited_IT_2017)

In (181), the NP ís̃rdù ‘eye of well’ is interpreted as the location of the lizard. In (182) šr-dú ‘C5-mortar’ is interpreted as the location of the calabash; the overt locative phrase šmé ūkúr ‘inside the room’ is within the NP headed by dú ‘mortar’.

30 Adjectives are a separate word category (see 1.1.3.1.5 and Smith 2007: 86) and show distinct morphosyntax when functioning as a predicate, namely agreement with the noun class of the NP which precedes the copula; copular adjectival predicates are discussed in §6.2.2.2.
Use of the NP predicate construction for expression of location is less frequent than use of a prepositional phrase expressing location, which will be described in §6.2.2.3.

**6.2.1.4 Quantifier NP Predicate Constructions**

To form a NP Predicate Construction with a quantification interpretation, one need only use a quantifier NP with the copula ɔ́. The quantifier noun ù-tát ‘C3-many’ does not alter in any way to agree with another NP. It always occurs with the class 3 prefix, as seen in (183).

(183) [dím t-ð nó] ɔ́ [ù-tát] ɔ́ = t-máʔrər
    name=C6-ASSOC bird COP C3-many LOC = C6-PN
    ‘Names of birds are many in Ut-Ma’Ror (variety of Ut-Ma’in)’ (MM_Ror_2017: 209)

In the next section I describe uses of the copula ɔ́ with nonverbal predicates that are not NPs.

**6.2.2 Other nonverbal predicate constructions with copula ɔ́**

Beyond NP predicates, numerals, adjectives, locative prepositional phrases and simulative clauses headed by the preposition ðkā ‘like, as’, can serve as predicates following the copula ɔ́.
6.2.2.1 **Numeral predicate construction**

Numeral predicates are marked for agreement with the noun class of the subject. In (184), the numeral gān ‘one’ occurs with the AG5 prefix in agreement with the C5 NP remdɔ́ ásus ‘language of the Us people’ that precedes the copula.31

(184)  
rem = d-ɔ́  
á-s-ùs  
δ = r-gān  
δ = kàg-nè = nè  
tongue = AG5-ASSOC  
C2-C4-PN  
COP = C5-one  
LOC = PN-C2 = with  
‘Language of the Us people is one with Kag people.’ (UW_US_2017: 1.15-1.17)

6.2.2.2 **Predicate Adjective Constructions**

There are only eight known adjectives (Smith 2007: 86 and discussion in §3.5).

These may form a predicate following the copula ɔ́, as in (185) through (188). In (185), the adjective jāt ‘big’ must be marked for agreement with the noun class of the subject. Example (186) demonstrates that the copula can be marked for past tense in an Adjective Predicate construction. In (187) the same adjective jāt ‘big’ is marked for agreement with the class 7 noun rwāg ‘elephant’; in (188) the adjective is marked for class 5 agreement with the subject bjā ‘barn’.

(185)  
bū-ū = ɔ́  
?δ = jāt-ɔ́  
house-C3 = C3.DEF  
COP = big-C3.AG  
‘That house is big.’ (elicited SJ_2017_GD_144-146)

(186)  
bū-ū = ɔ́  
?δ-gæ: jāt-ɔ́  
house-C3 = C3.DEF  
COP-PST big-C3.AG  
‘That house was big.’ (elicited SJ_2017_GD_415-417)

(187)  
rwāg-ū  Ø  jā,  jā  δ  jāt-jɔ́  
elephant-C7  
C7.OBJ  
C7.SUBJ  
COP big-C7  
‘Elephant, it is; it is big.’ / ‘That elephant, it is big’ (elicited SJ_2006)
Though I have just said that predicate adjectives agree in class with the subject, at first glance (189c) seems to show a mismatch between the C7 noun class marking on the adjective and the C1 class to which the subject wā ‘C1.SUBJ’ belongs. The referent of wā ‘C1.SUBJ’ is clearly the noun the C1 noun zwār ‘young.man’, established as a class 1 in (189a) In Ut-Ma’in, CLASS 1 is the class of most human referents; but some human referent nouns occur in class 7. Perhaps the use of class 7 on the adjective is related to the meaning of ‘good + person’, where the intended referent is the class 7 noun ū-tfāmpá, which is the general word for ‘man/husband’. This parallels patterns for other Benue-Congo languages, notably at least some Bantu languages, where nouns denoting humans can belong to more than one noun class. In Chichewa, nouns in class pairings 12/13 and 7/8 denoting humans can trigger syntactic agreement with the appropriate 12/13 or 7/8 pronoun, or can trigger semantic agreement with the 1/2 (human) pronoun (Corbett 1991:248-250; see also Welmers 1973:175).

(189)  a. nā   nāŋ   wā-kōn   zwār = wā
       INDEF.SUBJ  do.PST  C1-there young.man = C1
       ‘There was a certain young man,’

b. ǭ = ǭ-kōn
   tās = ǭ
   LOC = C3-there   village = DEF.AG3
   ‘in a certain village.’

c. wā = Ńō   sō-jā
     C1.SUBJ = COP  good-AG7
     ‘He is handsome,’

d. wā   rāté   ħik = dā
     C1.SUBJ  NEG.have  money = NEG
     ‘(but) he does not have money.’ (YM_IY_Ror_2013: 1-4)
6.2.2.3 Prepositional locative predication construction

A prepositionally-marked locative phrase can be the complement of the copula ɔ́. There is no marking of agreement between the NPs encoded within a prepositional phrase and the clause initial NP. In (190) the overt locative preposition ɔ́dóm ‘LOC-top’ follows the copula and precedes the noun ɔ́kdóm ər-fārək ‘C5-throne’; the clause expresses the location of fārək ‘king’. Example (191) expresses the metaphorical association of a particular kind of bird among the larger category of all birds using a copula and a locative prepositional phrase. 32

NP  ɔ́  LOC
| (190)  fārək-Ø  ɔ́  [ɔ́dóm  ər-fārək] |
| king-c1  COP  LOC-top  C5-throne |

‘A king is on a throne’ (Primer 2009:95)

NP  ɔ́  LOC
| (191)  kó  kōt-Ø  ɔ́  [ɔ́ = tēkō  Ø-nō] |
| even  guinea.fowl-c2  COP  LOC = middle.of  C2-bird |

‘Even the guinea fowl are a kind of bird.’ (lit: ‘are in the middle of birds’) (MM_Ror_2017: 223)

6.2.2.4 Similative predicate construction

The structure of a similative predicate resembles the prepositional locative predicate structure. In the Similative construction the general LOC morpheme ɔ́ precedes the morpheme kā which yields a meaning of ‘same’ or ‘like’. However, the possible instantiations of the predicate differ from the prepositional locative predicate

32 Alternately, this can be understood as a kind of categorization predicate. However, it clearly has locative phrase syntax and as such is included in this section.
construction, as the constituent that follows ēkā may be can be either an NP (192) or an entire clause (193).

(192) ʰē nā ʰē ēkā fē s-` = u-te
and NPERS COP like branches AG4-ASSOC=C7-tree
‘and they are like branches of a tree’

(193) bē ʰē ēkā rē-5 mō-t: bē zā=t-ʃán ʰē=r-tāk têm
2SG COP like god-C3 build-PFT 2SG NEG=C6-feather LOC=C5-beginning
‘you are like creator made you featherless in the beginning’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 30-31)

Figure 23 summarizes uses of copula ē described in this section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTIONAL FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjective Predicate CxN</td>
<td>NP ē ADJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overt Locative Predicate CxN</td>
<td>NP ē PREPLOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similative Predicate CxN</td>
<td>NP ē ēkā NP/CL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 23: Other constructions with copula ē

In the next section I describe the negation pattern of copular constructions. Use of a single negative strategy for the negative counterpart of all the constructions discussed in 6.2.1 and 6.2.2 supports including possessive (6.2.4) and existential (6.2.4) predicates within this chapter on copular constructions.

6.2.3 Negative Copular Construction

Negative copular construction uses the negative copula zā. The source of zā ‘NEG.COP’ is likely the nominal negator zā ‘no’, shown in (194) and (195), or vice-versa.

(194) zā=r-ʃān
NEG=C6-feather
‘featherless’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 31)
The zá ‘NEG.COP’ is used in place of the ɔ́ ‘COP’ to negate a copular clause. There is some variation in the pronunciation of the initial consonant of the negative copula; some speakers use the fricative /z/, some the flap /ɾ/, and some the stop /d/. The NP that precedes the negative copula has the same subject properties we have seen with Basic Verbal Constructions and Copular Constructions. In (196b), the subject pronoun ɘ́m ‘1SG.SUBJ’ is cliticized to the negative copula. The semantically main predicate is the class marked indefinite pronoun ɔ̀-kɘ́n ‘c3-there’ which translates in other non-negative contexts as ‘something’. When it co-occurs with the negative copula, then ɔ̀-kɘ́n translates as ‘nothing’. Here we know that the negation is on the clause level (i.e. is negating the predication, and not just an NP) for two reasons: the use of the subject form pronoun preceeding the zá and the co-occurring use of the clausal negator =da.

A tree that is good, it has produced fruit that is good. A tree that is not good, it has produced bad fruit. (GM_draft 2019: 12.33)
6.2.4 Possessive Predication Constructions

There are at least six reasons to include possessive and existential predication in the chapter on nonverbal predication: (1) there is a possessive predication construction that uses the $\delta$ ‘COP’ with a postpositional phrase as the lexical element of the predicate; (2) the copula $\delta$ ‘COP’ is the first component of the posseesive verbal element $\delta t\dot{e}$ and of the existential $\delta r\acute{e}$ ‘exist’; (3) the nominal negator $\dot{z}a$ turned copula is the first component of the negative possessive verbal element $\dot{z}a t\acute{e}$ ‘NEG.COP.POSS’ and of the negative existential $\dot{z}ar$ ‘NEG.COP.EXIST’; (4) only a nonverbal element may follow the copular forms used in possessive and existential predicates; (5) the existential $\delta r\acute{e}/\dot{z}ar$ may be used for locational, quantitative, attributive predication parallel to the $\delta/\dot{z}a$ copulas; and (6) possessive and existential predicates are included in the typology of nonverbal predication (Overall et al. 2018). These structural and semantic properties are described in the final sections of this chapter.

There are five possessive constructions in Ut-Ma’in schematized in Figure 24. In each, the NP$_{PSSR}$ precedes the copular element and the NP$_{PSSD}$ follows the copular element. It is possible to focus the possessed noun by placing it in clause initial position. The negative copula $\dot{z}a$ is only attested with $\dot{z}a t\acute{e}$ in the negative possessive construction. The Past tense Possessive ‘with’ construction provides a “no longer true”
reading of a previous possessive state; no negative morpheme occurs. In Figure 24 the think horizontal line indicates a division in th possessive constructions by the verb used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTIONAL FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POSSESSIVE ‘WITH’ PRED CXN</td>
<td>NP&lt;sub&gt;PSSR&lt;/sub&gt; ʒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST POSSESSIVE ‘WITH’ PRED CXN</td>
<td>NP&lt;sub&gt;PSSR&lt;/sub&gt; ʒtɛ́</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSSESSIVE PRED CXN</td>
<td>NP&lt;sub&gt;PSSR&lt;/sub&gt; ʒtɛ́</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS POSSESSIVE PRED CXN</td>
<td>NP&lt;sub&gt;PSSD&lt;/sub&gt; ʒtɛ́</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRED CXN</td>
<td>NP&lt;sub&gt;PSSR&lt;/sub&gt; zātɛ́</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 24: Schematic of Possessive Predicate Constructions

### 6.2.4.1 Affirmative Possessive Predication Constructions

There are two affirmative possessive predication constructins. First, the Possessive ‘with’ construction transparently uses ʒ ‘COP’ plus a possessed NP within a postpositional phrase carrying =nè ‘with’, as in (199).

(199) a. ɗgɗ d̀̀ nā màtọ̀ wá,
     from time NSPEC give.birth C2.OBJ
     NP<sub>PSSR</sub> ʒ NP<sub>PSSD</sub> =nè

(200) b. wá ʒ [n̂m = Ø - ɗ s-tɛ́] = nè
     C1.OBJ COP thing = C2-ASSOC C4-tree = with

(a) From the time she was born, (b) she has a demon’ (lit: ‘she is with things of trees’)
(PW_IY_Ror_2013_6.380 - 9.610)

Towards the end of the same text, the speaker uses the same construction to present the woman’s supernatural children who are the descendants of her and the evil spirit. This is not describing the birth of children; she “has” these children in the sense that they exist and belong to her; in fact the speaker emphasizes that she is the only one who sees them.
In (202), also from the same text, the second possessive construction which uses the form ɔ́t ‘COP.POSS’ is used to describe the exact same situation of possessing mythical children. The possessed item need not be animate. See (203) and (204) for additional examples.

6.2.4.2 Past and Negative Possessive Predication Constructions

The Possessive ‘with’ construction can occur in the past tense, with the tense marked on the copular verb, as in (205). Use of the past tense morpheme expresses that a state of possession is no longer true.

(205) mɔ́ ɔ́t-gɔ́ m-tɔ̀r nè
C6B.SUBJ COP-PST C6M-cold with
‘It (the water) was cold (it is not cold now).’ (elicited_SJ_Ror_2017: BB85)

(206) ɔ́t ɔ́t-gjɛ́r = nè
1PL.EXCL COP-PST C3-fear = with
‘We had fear.’ (lit: ‘We were with fear.’) (UH_Juur_2017: 010)
The negative possessive predication construction uses \( zá\text{'tɛ́} '\text{NEG.COP.POSS}' \) replacing the \( ðtɛ́ '\text{COP.POSS}' \). The clause final clitic \( =dá \) is also required. Example (207) is from a story about a young man who wants to marry, but struggles to find a wife because he is poor.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NP}_{\text{PSSR}} & \quad \text{\( zá\text{'tɛ́} \)} & \quad \text{NP}_{\text{PSSD}} & = \text{dá} \\
\text{wā} & = ?s & \text{s3-jà,} & \quad \text{wā} & \quad \text{rātɛ́} & \quad ðjk = \text{dá} \\
\text{C1.SUBJ} & = \text{COP} & \text{good-C7.AG} & \quad \text{C1.SUBJ} & \text{NEG.COP.POSS} & \text{money} = \text{NEG}
\end{align*}
\]

‘He is handsome, (but) he does not have money.’ (YM_IY_Ror_2013: 003-004)

In the next section I describe existential nonverbal predication.

### 6.2.5 Existential Constructions

There are seven existential constructions in Út-Ma'in schematized in Figure 25. The NP that precedes the copular element demonstrates the subject properties described in 5.3. I express it here as \( \text{NP}_{\text{SUBJ}} \). To predicate the existence of a referent without regard to any other feature/value, the clause may end with one of two forms of the copula \( ðjɛ́ \) (\( ðjɛ́ \) and \( ðtɛ́ \)) or with the existential copula \( ðrò \). However, a quantifier or a \( \text{PrepP}_{\text{LOC}} \) may follow the \( ðrò '\text{COP.EXT}' \) to predicate the existence of referent in a particular location, or it may express a particular numerical value. The negative counterpart of both these existential predicate constructions uses \( zá\text{'r} \ '\text{NEG.COP.EXT}' \) plus the phrase final \( =\text{da} \)

‘ \( =\text{NEG}' \) In Figure 25, MOD indicates various modifier phrase types that can occur as discussed in the sections below.
### Affirmative Existential Constructions

When the copula forms ọ́jé and ọ́tcé are used to predicate the existence of some entity, they occur clause finally, as in (208) and (209) for ọ́jé and (210) for ọ́tcé. These perhaps should be considered presentational constructions (Creissels 2013: 15). Example (210) occurs in a text after explanation of the differences between saying something in the trade language Hausa and the local ĥt-Ma'in language.

(208) ɗɛ̀ ọ́jé
C5.SUBJ COP-FOC
‘It exists.’

(209) wá-t-kášɛ̀ = wá, ɓɛ́m ọ́jé
C1-C6-teach = C1.POSS 1SG.SUBJ COP-FOC
‘His teacher, I am/exist.’

(210) ɗyá ọ́tcé
like.that COP.PFT
‘That is how it is.’ (MM_Ror_2017: 351)

(211) a. bę = d-ɗ [kw̄m-t=nɛ́ ọ́tcé]
place = AG5-REL property-C6 2PL.POSS COP.PFT
b. [kɔ̀ná], [ɗjàb-ɗ = ró] ọ́tcé
there heart-C3 = 2SG COP.PFT
‘The place that your property has been located, there has been located your heart.’
(MT_draft_2019: 6.21)
The existential copula ŋró can predicate the existence of any referent. In (212), the NP pò-mò ‘tiredness-C6B.SUBJ’ carries the subject suffix, and the existence of “tiredness” is asserted.

(212) pò-mò ŋró
tiredness-C6B.SUBJ COP.EXT
‘I am tired.’ (lit: ‘There is tiredness.’) (Hausa akwai gajiya)

This ŋró form resembles the copula plus locative ?èl-ló ‘COP-there’ used to predicate existence in the related and neighboring language C’Lela (Dettweiler 2015: 112). In C’Lela the copula ?èl is used in a variety of constructions separately from ló ‘there’; Dettweiler (2015: 95) describes ló ‘there’ as an Adverb. This comparative evidence suggests that the òt-Ma’in existential copula ŋró may come from a copula plus locative, though òt-Ma’in ŋró by itself does not express locative ‘there’. (To predicate the existential location of a referent, an additional locative morpheme is required, as ʤ = kén ‘LOC = there’ in (217).)

The existential copula is used to predicate the existence of bird names in (213). In an excerpt discussing ‘dove’ names with a Ror speaker, ŋró ‘COP.EXT’ is used two times although five different ‘doves’ are named. Clause (213a) is a repetition by the speaker of the question posed to the speaker.
The form ərò occurs in the Ror variety, but the form rərò is found in the southernmost variety, Juur. Example (214) is a longer list of various bird names from a Juur speaker. This initial r consonant resembles the copula rə ‘be’ in the closely related Uţ-Hun language whose area borders the Juur people (Bendor-Samuel et al. 1973: 69). The rərò form is used in the most northern language variety Kuur, as illustrated in the mention of snake names in the region in (215).
(214) a. (dím = t-à Ø-nô) òt-má = in = á, tó
   name = AG6-ASSOCC 2C-bird C6-language = 1PL.INCL.POSS = Q okay
b. kagəmkagəm-Ø rārō
   heron-C2.SUBJ COP.EXT
c. gòròp-r = rārō
   dove = C5.SUBJ = COP.EXT
d. várənvêt-Ø rārō
   cattle.egret-C2.SUBJ COP.EXT
e. kwāsgəj-ô rārō jà jà rèk-jà
   lizard.buzzard-C7.SUBJ COP.EXT C7 C7 small-C7
f. pènpək-r rārō
   longtail.nightjar-C5.SUBJ COP.EXT
g. kwàrg-r rārō
   bush.fowl-C5.SUBJ COP.EXT
h. ü-kût jà rārō
   c7-chicken C7 COP.EXT

‘(a) Names of birds in our language? Ok. (b) There are heron... (c) There is the dove...
(d) There are cattle egret... (e) There is the lizzard buzzard; it is the small one...
(f) There is the longtail nightjar... (g) There is the bush fowl... (h) Chicken, there is.
   (HH_HF_Juur_2017: 193, 196, 211, 225, 226, 231, 257, 262)

(215) kóks-bò rārō े?bò rārō
   black.cobra-C7.SUBJ COP.EXT python-C7.SUBJ COP.EXT
‘There is the black python and there is the python.’ (HK02_Kuur_2017: 007)

Example (216) demonstrates that a quantifier NP may follow the existential copula.

Example (217) demonstrates that a locative prooun may follow the existential copula;
in (218b) a locative PrepP_LOC follows the existential copula. Example (219)
demonstrates that an adjective may follow the existential copula.

(216) äŋk-mò ərō ü-tât
   work-C6B.SUBJ COP.EXT C3-much
‘Much work exists.’

(217) no-jò ərō े=kān...
   bird-C7.SUBJ COP.EXT LOC-where
‘There is a bird there... (MM_Ror_2017: 238)
6.2.5.2 Negative Existential Constructions

The Negative Existential construction is formed using the copula zár ‘NEG.COP.EXT’ plus the phrase final =dá ‘NEG’. In (220), the two negators zár+dá are adjacent and pronounced phonetically as [zál:á].

\[ \text{NP} \quad zár=dá \]

(220) då 5m té-n=é, dåk-ð zár=dá
time 1SG arrive-DIST =FOC land-c3.SUBJ NEG.COP.EXT =NEG
‘When I arrived, there was no land.’ SFC_IT_Juur_2005: 32)

(221) gān=dā zár=dá
one=c5.SUBJ NEG.COP.EXT =NEG
‘One, there is not.’ (PS_IY_Ror_2013: 071)

A second NP can occur between the zár ‘NEG.COP.EXT’ and the clause final =da ‘NEG’, as seen in (222).

\[ \text{NP} \quad \text{C1-there} \quad \text{NEG.COP.EXT} \quad \text{knowledge=AG5-ASSOC=c5-mouth} \quad \text{NEG} \]

wā-kān zár nāp=d-ð=r-nú då
C1-there NEG.COP.EXT knowledge=AG5-ASSOC=c5-mouth NEG
‘There was no one who knew the beginning’ (SFC_IT_Juur 2005: 22)
(lit: Someone there is not knowledge of mouth.)

6.3 Chapter summary

Figure 26 summarizes the Út-Ma’in nonverbal predicate constructions described in this chapter. The final two columns indicate the copular element found in each
construction. As can be seen, a number of question marks occur in the final columns, highlighting an absence of data in the corpus used for this study and hence still needed research.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Payne (1997)</th>
<th>Ut-Ma'in Nonverbal Cxn</th>
<th>Uses δ Copula</th>
<th>Uses zá Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proper Inclusion</td>
<td>NP Ø NP</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equative</td>
<td>NP Ø NP_EQUIV</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP NP_EQUIV</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributive</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP NP_ATTR</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP A</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP NP_LOC</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>✁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP PrepLOC</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possession</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ/PSSR COP POSTP_PSSD</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ/PSSR COP.POSS NP_PSSD</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>✁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existential</td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP</td>
<td>✁</td>
<td>✁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP_EXT</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>✁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP_EXT NP_QUANT</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP_EXT PrepLOC</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NP_SUBJ COP_EXT NP_MOD</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>✁</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 26: Ut-Ma'in nonverbal predicates and copula use
CHAPTER VII
OVERVIEW OF MULTI-VERB CONSTRUCTIONS AND TYPE I AND TYPE II AUXILIARIES

7.1 Introduction to multi-verb constructions

Chapters VII through X describe a variety of multi-verb constructions (CXNs) that are structurally unified in that the tense-aspect-mode-polarity (TAMP) designation is indicated by an auxiliary or possibly matrix verb and the main semantic predicate is contained within a nominalized VP. The major multi-verb constructions discussed in Chapters VII through X are schematized in Figure 29, in contrast to the basic verbal predication constructions presented in Chapter V. In Figure 27, the abbreviation AUX indicates the position of two potential auxiliaries (Chapter VII §7.3). The abbreviation LEX indicates the position of three lexical elements that co-occur with the progressive auxiliary (Chapter VII §7.4). LEXAUX indicates the position of the many “lexical auxiliaries” described in Chapter IX. The abbreviation “(TNS)” in parentheses indicates an optional tense suffix. Shaded lines in Figure 27 indicate a negative (NEG) construction. The abbreviation “(O)” in parentheses indicates an optional object. The remainder of this section briefly introduces the constructions, what structurally unifies them, and the rationale for handling them in separate chapters.
For all multi-verb constructions listed in Figure 27, the Subject NP (S/A) comes first. Second, the “auxiliary” verb (or phrase) occurs in what would be the same “V” slot of a typical basic predication clause (Chapter V). Third, the semantically main verb occurs in a nominalized verb phrase (\(\text{VP}_{\text{NMLZ}}\)) form after the auxiliary verb. Objects always follow their lexical verb, that is, the order is VO within the nominalized phrase.

As stated above, the abbreviation “(TNS)” in Figure 27 indicates optional tense marking on verb or auxiliary verb forms: for basic verbal predicates covered in Chapter IV, both past -\(\text{g}\) ‘PST’ and perfect -\(\text{t}\)è ‘PFT’ occur. For Type I auxiliary constructions, only optional past tense -\(\text{g}\) ‘PST’ can occur. For Type III auxiliary constructions and ‘do’ predication constructions, either the past -\(\text{g}\) ‘PST’ or the perfect -\(\text{t}\)è ‘PFT’ may optionally occur.
The morphological shape of the nominalized V in the auxiliary constructions varies based on whether the expression is syntactically intransitive (INTR) or syntactically (di)transitive (TRAN).\(^\text{33}\) For INTR structures, the nominalization is marked by a noun class prefix on the V (cf. §3.2.3). For TRAN structures, the object is expressed in an ASSOCP dependent to the nominalized V head (cf. Chapter IV, specifically §4.5). As in basic verbal predication clauses, the order is V–P<sub>obj</sub>/V–R<sub>obj</sub>–T<sub>obj</sub> within the nominalized phrase, but only P and R objects immediately following the V are required to be in an ASSOCCXN; T objects of ditransitives are not within an ASSOCCXN unless the R object NP is omitted.

There are three formally distinct types of Ut-Ma'in auxiliary constructions. Two are described here in Chapter VII, and the third is described in Chapter IX. The discussion of auxiliary constructions is divided into two chapters because of a split in the negation strategy used. Auxiliary construction Types I and II have a shared “double” negation strategy that uses both the nominal negator za ‘NEG’ (which has developed into the negative copula/auxiliary) and the =da ‘NEG’ clausal negation enclitic (see §6.3 and §6.4). The Auxiliary construction Type III uses only the =da ‘NEG’ clausal negation enclitic (see Chapter IX).

The Type I auxiliary construction expresses progressive and future by means of the particular auxiliary chosen. Progressive aspect is expressed by š, the copula-turned-auxiliary-verb (cf. Chapter VI §6.2), that may occur in a bare verb form or a past tense

\(^{33}\) Recall that in this study INTR is used as shorthand for syntactically intransitive, i.e. there is no expressed object NP; TRAN is used as shorthand for syntactically transitive, i.e. there is an expressed object NP (see discussion in §5.1).
form. Future tense is marked by the auxiliary ḏ́ɛ́. Both progressive and future clauses are negated with the same negative morpheme ṭá ‘NEG.COP’, a copula-turned-negative-auxiliary.

Type II auxiliaries are complex. These auxiliary words all contain the ḏ́ sensory auxiliary procliticized to another lexical item from a small restricted set; all Type II auxiliary constructions have a progressive or immediate future interpretation.

For the most part, Type III auxiliaries are forms that still double as synchronic lexical verbs. When used as auxiliaries, they have varied meanings of future obligation, telicity, habitual action, continuative, inchoative, completive and frequentative aspect.

Clausal constructions with all three types of auxiliaries require the same subject for both the auxiliary and the semantically main nominalized verb that is the structural complement to the auxiliary verb.

Chapter VIII deals with several ‘want’-constructions, which may be thought of as matrix-plus-complement constructions. I discuss the ‘want’ constructions immediately after Chapter VII because of the structural similarities that they share with Type I and II auxiliary constructions. In particular, (i) they occur with the copula-turned-auxiliary ḏ́ (of the same as the Type I progressive auxiliary) preceding the nominalized verb ṣ-sā ‘c4-want’; (ii) they follow the “double” negation pattern used by Type I and II auxiliaries; and (iii) when the subject of the complement clause is the same as the subject of the ‘want’-matrix clause, then the complement clause is nominalized like the semantically main verb of an auxiliary construction. The ‘want’ constructions are, however, handled in a separate chapter because when the subject of the complement clause is different from the subject of the ‘want’-matrix clause, the complement clause
not nominalized; rather, it is a fully inflected finite clause with the pattern of the basic verbal predication described in Chapter V. Both nominalized and finite ‘WANT’-complement clauses are described in Chapter VIII.

Finally, Chapter X describes predications using the verb ‘DO’. ‘DO’ predication constructions are quite varied. One of the constructions is similar to the multi-verb constructions covered in Chapters VII-IX, which is the reason for mentioning ‘DO’ predication constructions in this overview. In particular, there is a transitive ‘DO’ construction whose P argument is a nominalized verb. In this transitive construction, the ‘DO’ verb and the semantically main nominalized complement of ‘DO’ must have the same subject and the verbs themselves are in fact co-referential to the same “activity”. In this way, the ‘DO’ verb in the relevant transitive construction has an auxiliary-like function relative to the main semantic predicate expressed in the nominalized complement.

The next section discusses the criteria used for determining what is an “auxiliary” and what criteria have been used to delimit what are considered auxiliary constructions in Chapters 7-10.

7.2 Identifying auxiliary verbs in ʕt-Ma’in

Since nominalized verbs can be used as the complement to many ʕt-Ma’in verbs, I must establish some criteria for what I call an auxiliary. I define an ʕt-Ma’in auxiliary as a verb that exhibits at least some verbal morphosyntax and gives the clause its tense, aspect, or mode interpretation, but the auxiliary verb does not express the main lexical predicate of the clause (Heine 1993:22-23). Figure 28 schematically compares the basic
verbal predication construction (Chapter V) and the Type I basic auxiliary construction (§7.3). The bold boxes list properties of the verb phrases and indicate differences between the two construction types. In the Basic verbal predication construction, any optional tense marking is on the only verb of the clause which is also the main semantic predicate; any object follows the verb. For the Type I basic auxiliary construction, the tense is marked on the auxiliary verb, which also expresses some other aspect or mode category; the main semantic predicate is within the nominalized verb complement (VP\textsubscript{NMLZ}); any object is contained within an ASSOCP within the nominalized VP.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Construction Label</th>
<th>S/A</th>
<th>V(TNS)</th>
<th>(O)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic Verbal Predication CXN</td>
<td>S/A</td>
<td>V(TNS)</td>
<td>(O)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type I: Basic Auxiliary CXN</td>
<td>S/A</td>
<td>AUX(TNS)</td>
<td>VP\textsubscript{NMLZ}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 28: Comparison of basic verbal predication to Type I basic auxiliary predication

As Figure 30 shows, Ut-Ma'in auxiliaries occur in the same syntactic position as the verb in basic verbal predication construction. For example, in (224) the auxiliary ɬ-g ‘PROG-PST’ occurs immediately following the subject argument ʷā ‘C1.SUBJ’ parallel to
the verb *tātān* ‘shoot.PFT.DIST’ in the Basic predication construction that occurs in (223).
The nominalized main semantic verb of the auxiliary construction follows the auxiliary, in the same syntactic position as the P argument in a basic predication construction. For example, the nominalized verb *ẽm-hã* ‘C6B-walking’ in (224) occurs in the same syntactic position as the P argument *ẽm-rândi* ‘C6B-thread’ in (223).

```
(223) kóná dâridâŋg-jò tâ-tān ẽm-rândi târ:
   there  spider-C7.SUBJ shoot-PFT-DIST C6B-thread IDEO
   ‘There Spider shot his spider web, “tarrrrrr”.’ (SFC_IT_Jiir_2006: 020)
```

```
(224) wā ū-g ẽm-hã
   C1.3SG.SUBJ PROG-PST C6B-walk
   ‘He was walking.’
```

Some Ût-Ma’i’in auxiliaries can be marked for tense via verb suffixes, as exemplified by the past tense suffix on the progressive auxiliary in (224). All auxiliary verbs in Ût-Ma’i’in add grammatical or functional meaning to the clause. Categories expressed by auxiliaries in Ût-Ma’i’in include: progressive, future, negative, inceptive, deontic, habitual, completive, frequentative, continuative.

Some auxiliaries are straightforward indicators of aspect and show evidence of having grammaticalized. But some verbs present a challenge in terms of whether they should be included in the set of auxiliaries. For example, I do not consider *zõytë* ‘prepare.PRF’ in (225) an auxiliary because it expresses the main lexical predicate; there is no semantic shift, bleaching or broadening in its use. However, I consider *héstë* ‘start’ in (226) an auxiliary because the function of *héstë* is to only mark the phasal boundary of the main semantic activity of ‘build’, a so-called inchoative aspect, akin to aspectualizer auxiliaries (cf. Heine’s (1993: 60) quasi-auxiliaries and Brinton’s (1988: 144).
82) catenatives). In (226) the main lexical predicate is encoded by *mā* ‘build’. We know that ‘build’ is nominalized because its P argument ‘big house’ is expressed within an ASSOCCXN (cf. §3.2.3, §4.4, and §4.5).

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
A & V & [P] \\
(225) & tʃàmpájə & zʊŋtə & [hā m-` = u-tól:ə]
\end{array}
\]

man.C7.SUBJ prepare.PRIF [go AG6B-ASSOC = C3-market]

‘The man prepared market-going.’

(citation forms: ŋm-hā ‘C6B-going’ and ŋ-tól:ə ‘C3-market’)

Free English translation: ‘The man prepared to/for going to market.’

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
A = Aux & VP_{NMLZ} \\
(226) & wā = héstə & [mā = d-ə = bū-ū ját-ə]
\end{array}
\]

C1.SUBJ = start build-C5-ASSOC-house big-C3.AG

‘He starts to build a big house’ (elicited SJ_2017_GD_519-521)

Regarding argument structure, “true” auxiliaries have a shared argument structure between the auxiliary verb and the nominalized semantically main verb. The inchoative auxiliary in (226) conveys only one event, the event of building. The auxiliary only serves to add aspectual meaning focused on a particular phase of the building – the “start of building”. In addition, an auxiliary like *héstə* ‘start’ shares the argument structure of the nominalized verb that is the semantically main predicate. The non-auxiliary in (225) portrays two separate events – the event of preparing and the event of going/traveling. Further, these two events have separate argument structures. “Preparing” requires a P argument, something must be prepared. “Going” requires no P argument, but may take a goal argument instead.

With this background on the definition and identification of auxiliaries and on the structure of auxiliary constructions generally, we now turn to Type I and Type II auxiliary constructions.
7.3 Type I: Basic Auxiliary Constructions - progressive and future

Basic auxiliary constructions are so-called “basic” because they are the most common of the auxiliary constructions. They occur often in recorded dialogues reporting witnessed events, and are the most common of the auxiliary constructions in narrative texts. In the Spider, Frog and Chameleon text (SFC_IT_Jiir_2006), presented in detail in Paterson (2015: 240-245), 11% (9 out of 79 clauses) are progressive or future auxiliary constructions. No other auxiliary constructions occur in this particular text. The only other clause construction type that occurs more frequently is the – pervasive – Bare Verb construction that carries the main event line of the narrative: 36.5% (27/79 clauses). In narrative texts they are used to establish the setting in the early lines of the text, in the reported speech of characters within the text, and in summary/conclusion statements at the end of texts.

The basic auxiliary verb forms are also the simplest of all auxiliary word forms. The copula-turned-auxiliary verb ɔ́ ‘PROG’ yields a progressive aspect, indicating an incomplete action that may be construed as either present time or past time (Comrie 1976: 35; see §6.2 for discussion of the copula). The negative copula-turned-negative auxiliary verb zá ‘NEG.AUX’ is used along with the clausal negator =da ‘NEG’ to negate both the ɔ́ progressive and the dɛ́ future constructions. Because of this shared negation strategy, the future auxiliary verb dɛ́ ‘FUT’ is included as a Type I auxiliary.
Table 31: Type I auxiliaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative AUX</th>
<th>Negative AUX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɨ́</td>
<td>‘PROG’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɗ̀</td>
<td>‘FUT’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We now examine constructions with each of the Type I auxiliaries.

7.3.1 Affirmative progressive auxiliary constructions

In this section I present the affirmative intransitive (INTR), transitive (TRAN) and ditransitive (also TRAN) progressive auxiliary constructions. This section also serves as an introduction to the differences in structures due to transitivity that hold true for many types of multi-verb constructions and auxiliary constructions in particular. The differences in transitivity are reflected in the morphosyntactic details of the nominalized verb phrase that follows the auxiliary.

Figure 29 presents schematized structures for the three transitivity values of the Progressive Auxiliary Constructions. In Figure 29, C- stands for a noun class prefix and AG- stands for a noun class agreement prefix.\(^\text{34}\)

\(^{34}\) The prefix C- only occurs on the head of a noun/nominalized phrase; the prefix AG- occurs on non-head elements (cf. §1.1.3.1.3). In Figure 29 the non-head element is the associative phrase (cf. §1.1.3.1.3 and Chapter IV). Sometimes C- and AG- are formally identical, e.g., the C4 prefix is s- and the AG4 prefix is also s-. For other noun classes, C- and AG- are formally distinct, e.g., the C5 prefix is r- but the AG5 prefix is d- (cf. Table 18).
Figure 29: Morphosyntax of Progressive Auxiliary Constructions

For purposes of illustrating the morphosyntactic differences in the nominalized verb phrase relative to syntactic transitivity, consider (227)-(229). In each example, the 1SG subject pronoun ṭm ‘1SG.SUBJ’ occurs clause initially and the progressive auxiliary is in the past tense form, ṭ-gológica ‘PROG-PST’. A nominalized verb phrase then follows the auxiliary in each case. However, the nominal class marking on the nominalized VP is distinct for each transitivity value. For the intransitive progressive (227), the nominal class marking is prefixed to the lexical verb root. For the transitive progressive (228), the nominal class marking is prefixed to the associative marker that follows the lexical verb root (this associative marker often cliticizes to some element of the following NP; cf., Chapter IV). For the ditransitive progressive (229), the nominal class marking patterns after the transitive progressive in that it prefixes to the associative marker that follows the verb root; however, as shown in (229), the associative marker rarely cliticizes to the following NPs. More often it is an enclitic on the verb root.
Intransitive Progressive Auxiliary Construction

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S & AUX-TNS & C-V \\
\text{(227)} & ʲm & ʲ-gō m-hā \\
1SG.SUBJ & PROG-PST & C6B-walk \\
\end{array}
\]

‘I was walking.’

Transitive Progressive Auxiliary Construction

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & AUX-TNS & V & AG-ASSOC = P \\
\text{(228)} & ʲm & ʲ-gō všk & s-` = u-nēŋēn \\
1SG.SUBJ & PROG-PST & greet & AG4-ASSOC = C7-old.man \\
\end{array}
\]

‘I was greeting the old man.’

Ditransitive Progressive Auxiliary Construction

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & AUX-TNS & V = AG-ASSOC & R & T \\
\text{(229)} & ʲm & ʲ-gō jā = d-š & wōn ĕr-gā \\
1SG.SUBJ & PROG-PST & give = AG5-ASSOC & 3SG & C5-cooked.grain \\
\end{array}
\]

‘I was giving him cooked grain.’

The following sections look at details of the progressive constructions for each transitivity value.

7.3.1.1 Intransitive progressive construction

The Ūt-Ma’in intransitive progressive construction consists of the following elements: a subject and the auxiliary verb ʲ ‘PROG’ followed by the main semantic verb.

The word order and subject marking in the progressive construction are identical to what occurs in simple main clause syntax, i.e., the constituent order is A/SV, and the same subject pronoun/noun forms are used in both structures. In the Progressive, PAST TENSE may be suffixed to the auxiliary, as can be seen by comparing (230) and (231). This is different from the structure of non-progressive constructions, where the tense is suffixed to the main verb (cf., mār-g ‘die-PST’).
In an intransitive progressive construction, a prefix occurs on the semantically main verb. For instance, in both (230) and (231), the root *màr* ‘die’ occurs with the ɘ̄t- prefix, identical to the noun class 6 prefix from the noun class morphology presented in Chapter III Table 18. The noun class morphology may be viewed as either nominalizing the lexical verb, or as reflecting that the lexical verb has been nominalized by conversion. True verbs can be used in the bare verb form in a basic verbal predication construction (Chapter V §5.1). When these roots occur with a noun class marker, I consider them to have been nominalized Chapter III §3.3.3. Nominalized verbs can then be used in various constructions sensitive to NP and noun class morphosyntax.

Five noun class prefixes are attested in the intransitive progressive construction: ɘ̄-, s-, r-, t- and m-. These correspond to class prefixes from classes 3, 4, 5, 6 and 6B, and are shown in (232).
(232)  a. wāδ-gū-swát
    C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C3-fast
    ‘He was fasting (from food).’
  b. wāδ-gās-vāk
    C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C4-greet
    ‘He was greeting.’
  c. wāδ-gār-fāšāt
    C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C5-sit
    ‘He was sitting.’
  d. wāδ-gāt-swā
    C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C6-drink
    ‘He was drinking.’
  e. wāδ-gām-hā
    C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C6B-walk
    ‘He was walking.’

The choice of prefix on nominalized verbs used in the progressive is lexically specified. In the following section, I discuss what, if anything, determines variation among class prefixes in the Intransitive Progressive auxiliary construction.

7.3.1.1.1 Variation among class prefixes

Some roots, like ɗɔ̀g ‘hear’ in (233) and (234), can occur in the intransitive progressive construction with either of two noun class prefixes without a change of meaning. In cases where a nominalized verb root can combine with more than one prefix, one of the two prefixes always corresponds to class 6 ɘ̄t-, seen in (234). Not all lexical verb roots have such flexibility. Smith (2007: 37) suggested that perhaps noun class 6 on a verb root always indicates nominalization, whereas any other noun class on a root may indicate the presence of an activity noun. In the progressive construction, both forms of ‘hear’ are found. Perhaps the use of ɘ̄m-ɗɔ̀g ‘C6B-hear’ is historically from the nominal predicate copula construction meaning ‘He is (located in an activity
of) hearing’, but synchronically the clause can mean only ‘He is in this moment hearing.’

(233)   wā    ɔ́-g    ūm-hɔ̄g
         C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C6B-hear
   ‘He was hearing’

(234)   wā    ɔ́-g    ɔ́t-hɔ̀g
         C1.SUBJ PROG-PST C6-hear
   ‘He was hearing’

While these clauses have no expressed object, and hence count as syntactically INTR as defined in this work, they are not necessarily semantically intransitive. For example, in (232b, c), (233), and (234), there may be understood patients, addressees, etc. of the verbs, but they are not expressed. Semantically these are sometimes akin to Fillmore’s (1986: 96) “definite null” complements in that they refer to an identifiable participant retrievable from the discourse context. However, the same structure may also reflect instances of “indefinite null” complements (Fillmore 1986:96) where no recoverable object is required; in Fillmore’s words “the referent’s identity is unknown or a matter of indifference” (Fillmore 1986:96). For example, “greeting” is a very common social activity in a Nigerian context in which one visits the home of a friend or relative for an extended visit that may take several hours. A non-past version of a clause like (232b) might be used in response to a question like “What is he doing right now?” If asked over the phone, it would be understood that the person was not available for any other task/activity because they were in the midst of greeting someone; but there is no grammatical requirement to establish or express that person somewhere in the discourse.
We must also consider whether these clauses have the form and function of an antipassive construction, as the argument of an otherwise transitive verb is not expressed with the INTR form (Creissels 2012: 1). First, I recognize that this INTR form can convey an antipassive meaning, but as explained in the preceding paragraph this is not always true, as when the unstated object is a discourse “definite null” participant. Second, according to the criteria in Creissels’ (2012) proposal, antipassive constructions are:

i. formally intransitive

ii. involve verbs that also occur in prototypical transitive constructions

iii. have the agent encoded as the unique core argument of the intransitive predication

iv. may suppress the patient

By these criteria, the Ut-Ma'in intransitive progressive construction is not a dedicated antipassive construction as the exact same INTR construction is used for both intransitive verbs with affected-patient subjects, as shown in (230) for ‘die’, and for clauses with agent subjects, as in (232d) for ‘drink’. The word order, use of the copula, and morphological marking on the verb are identical between (230) and (232d).

Thirdly, it has been claimed by (Payne 1997: 219) that antipassive constructions typically have an overt marker of intransitivity. But there is no dedicated semantically intransitive-izing morpheme at play here; rather, there are instances of a particular form of the verb followed by (a) object-omission for definite null objects or (b) the option to omit the notional P argument because it is unimportant or unknown. In sum, the
INTR structure allows a speaker to choose to demote (i.e., delete) the object or notional P, but the INTR construction does not function as a dedicated antipassive structure.

7.3.1.1.2 Loss of prefix on nominalized verb

In the intransitive progressive there are instances of presumably nominalized verb roots occurring without a class prefix. In this section, I trace steps in the loss of the prefix. I conclude that this is a loss because I assume that historically the progressive construction developed from one of the predicate nominal copula constructions presented in §6.2.1 (see also Paterson (2019) for discussion). The synchronic intransitive progressive construction seems to be comprised of the basic predicate nominal construction (§6.2.1), into which a nominalized verb (§3.2.3) is inserted as the nominal predicate. From these source elements, we have almost all of the grammar of the intransitive progressive: the order of subject–predicate in the intransitive progressive construction is preserved from the order properties of the predicate nominal construction, along with the subject properties of the first NP, the verb $\delta \text{ 'COP'}$, and a slot for a nominal following the copula. Figure 30 displays the structure of the source constructions and the synchronous intransitive progressive construction that is clearly a combination of two more basic constructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Predicate Nominal Cxn</th>
<th>NP</th>
<th>$\delta$</th>
<th>C-N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Nominalized Verb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C-V_{NLZD}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTR PROGRESSIVE Cxn</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>$\delta$</td>
<td>C-V_{NLZD}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 30: Schematic of the intransitive progressive source elements
First, recall that we have seen that a nominalized verb can function in a fully nominal role (cf. §3.2.3). When functioning as “fully” nominal, such nominalized verbs occur with noun class marking. We see this noun class prefix in the INTR progressive. For instance, in the intransitive progressive in (235), the root $f\bar{\eta}t$ ‘sit’ occurs with the class 5 prefix $r$- following the progressive auxiliary. Compare this to the noun class marking co-occurring with $f\bar{\eta}t$ ‘sit’ in (236), repeated from (82), where it is fully nominal and occurs as the modifying NP in an ASSOCXN.

(235) $\ddot{e}k\ddot{e}n$ $\delta$ $r$-$f\bar{\eta}t$ $\delta$ $r\ddot{a}r\ddot{s}$l$:\ddot{e}$
    C2.some PROG C5-sit LOC mountain.C5.DEM

    ‘Some people are living on that mountain.’ (SJ_Ror_2006)

(236) bé t-$\ddot{s}$ = r $f\bar{\eta}t$ $\delta$ mén $\ddot{u}$-tát
    place AG6-ASSOC-C5 sitting COP stomach C3-many

    ‘Places for sitting are many within (the banquet hall).’ (GL 2008: c14 v22)

However, as a second step of development, in (237) the same root $f\bar{\eta}t$ ‘sit’ occurs again after the progressive auxiliary but without a noun class marker – even though ‘sit’ is the main semantic element in the intransitive progressive auxiliary construction, and even though semantically main lexical verbs in this construction are typically nominalized by overt class morphology.

(237) wâ $\delta$ $f\bar{\eta}t$
    1SG.SUBJ PROG sit

    ‘He is sitting.’ (GK 2013: 4)

Other verbs besides ‘sit’ also show absence of noun class prefix in the intransitive progressive auxiliary construction. By comparing (238) and (239), we see that the root $r\ddot{u}g$ ‘roam’ has a noun class prefix in the ‘go’ auxiliary construction (cf. §9.4.1), but loses the class prefix when it participates in the intransitive progressive. In (238) $r\ddot{u}g$ ‘roam’ occurs as a nominalized verb complement to the verb $h\ddot{s}$ ‘go’, carrying the class
6  \( t \)-prefix. However, in (239), ‘roam’ occurs in the intransitive progressive construction with no class prefix but with the same eventive meaning. The loss of nominal morphology on nominalized lexical verbs in the intransitive progressive construction seems to be an ongoing process in that it does not occur across all verb roots and probably not for all speakers.\[^{36}\]

\[(238)\]
\[
\text{wē} \quad \text{hō} \quad 5t-rīg \quad \text{bē} = \text{db} \quad \text{zā} \quad \text{m-}bō
\]
\[
1\text{SG.SUBJ} \quad \text{go.IR} \quad \text{C6-roam} \quad \text{LOC} \quad \text{place} = \text{AG5.REL} \quad \text{NEG.COP} \quad \text{C6M-water}
\]
\['\text{He goes roaming in the place that there is no water.'} (GL_{2008}: 11.24)\]

\[(239)\]
\[
\text{wē} \quad \text{ś} \quad \text{rīg} \quad \text{ś-dāʔ-ś} \quad \text{r-sō}
\]
\[
1\text{SG.SUBJ} \quad \text{PROG} \quad \text{roam} \quad \text{LOC-time-C3.DEF} \quad \text{C5-nakedness}
\]
\['\text{He is roaming now, naked.'} (PW_{IY_Ror_2013}: 41)\]

Regardless of the reason that the prefixes do not occur, the absence of the prefix in some instances shows that there is a shift in the grammar. In particular, the auxiliary verb  \( ś \) no longer requires overt class (i.e., nominalization) marking of an (erstwhile) nominal complement in all instances where there is progressive meaning. This is unlike the required presence of a class prefix on the second NP of the nominal predicate construction (cf. §6.2.1).

In summary, these examples show that one variant of the synchronic intransitive progressive structure is no longer identical to its source construction. In the next

\[^{36}\] In the text from which (239) is taken, two of six intransitive progressive constructions occur with no nominal prefix. It seems that the occurrence of a noun class prefix is related to the particular verb used. Further research might reveal that absence of prefixes in this construction also reflects speaker’s stylistic choice.
section, we see how a $P$ argument is overtly expressed in the transitive progressive construction.

### 7.3.1.2 Transitive progressive construction

In this section I first present the morphosyntax of the transitive progressive construction. In §7.3.1.2.1, I present evidence that, although the progressive constructions in general parallel the morphosyntactic structure of the nominal predicate copula constructions, the grammar of the ASSOC$\text{C}_X$ within the transitive progressive construction is showing a shift away from the NP source. This demonstrates the actualization of a new more “verbal” transative progressive construction. In §7.3.1.2.2, I present an additional piece of evidence that the ASSOC$\text{C}_X$ within the transitive progressive has a more limited function than in other nominalized contexts.

The transitive progressive shows several properties similar to the intransitive progressive. Subject properties in the transitive progressive construction are the same as in most clause types, and the progressive auxiliary ő carries any tense marking. However, there are other differences from other constructions. In order to understand crucial differentiating features of the transitive progressive construction, let us first take a look at two different clauses involving the progressive auxiliary and the same nominalized verb ǭk ‘greet’.

\[
(240) \quad \begin{array}{lll}
S & AUX & s-V \\
\text{1SG.SUBJ} & \text{PROG-PST} & \text{C4-greet}
\end{array}
\]

‘I was greeting.’
In (240) we find a structure that looks like the familiar intransitive progressive construction discussed in the preceding section. However, in (241) we see that when an overt object NP is added within the complement of the auxiliary, all of a sudden \( v\ddot{a}k \) no longer takes a noun class prefix. Instead an agreement-marked ASSOC occurs following the verb \( v\ddot{a}k \) ‘greet’. The ASSOC is marked for agreement with noun class 4, corresponding to the class of the citation form of the nominalized verb \( \ddot{s}-v\ddot{a}k \) ‘C4-greet’.

7.3.1.2.1 Changes in agreement marking of the ASSOC

In this section, we discuss changes in the agreement marking on the ASSOC which contains the object of the nominalized verb in a transitive progressive construction. The changes provide evidence that we are no longer dealing with only a nominalized verb phrase as a complement of the auxiliary \( \delta \). Instead, the formal changes hint that the originally-nominalized verb forms are gradually becoming less noun-like and more verb-like.

The grammar of the transitive progressive construction partially differs from that of the intransitive progressive construction in relation to the nominal morphology that occurs with the semantically main nominalized verb. In the transitive progressive construction, one of two noun class prefixes can occur on the low-tone associative marker before the post-verbal object NP. These are \( s- \), as in (241), and \( d- \), as in (242). In (242), the \( d- \) and low tone are cliticized to the mid-tone pronoun \( \ddot{w}\ddot{n} \) ‘3SG’.
The choice of *s*- vs. *d*- on the associative marker in the transitive progressive construction seems to be lexically specified on a verb-by-verb basis. That is, the prefix is related to the lexical noun class assignment of the particular (nominalized) verb used in the transitive progressive construction, and they are glossed in that way here, e.g. *AG4* for class 4 agreement. Crucially, the choice between *s*- and *d*- is not dependent on the lexical noun class of the object noun, like ‘old man’ or ‘3SG’, within the nominalized complement but rather on the lexicalized noun class of the nominalized verb. If the lexical classification of the nominalized verb is class 4, the prefix is *s*-.

If the lexical classification of the nominalized verb is anything other than class 4, the prefix is *d*-.

The distribution of prefixes on nominalized verbs is discussed in §3.2.3 (see also Smith (2007: 66) and Paterson (2012: 255-256)). Table 32 presents a summary of the changes in “nominal” marking of the semantically main nominalized verb forms in the transitive progressive construction, organized by lexicalized noun classification.37

Column one contains the citation form of the nominalized verb (i.e., as said or used outside of the transitive progressive construction). Column two contains the form of the nominalized verb as used in an intransitive progressive construction. Column three contains an example number in this study where that intransitive progressive clause occurs as part of a full example. Column four contains the form of the nominalized

37 These changes are true of at least the transitive progressive construction. Additional investigation is needed to assess whether the patterns hold for other auxiliary constructions.
transitive VP including the bracketed ASSOC<sub>CXN</sub> as found in an example in this study.

The final column contains the example number in this study where one can see that transitive progressive clause as part of a full example.

Table 32: Comparison of verb forms in progressive constructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citation form of V&lt;sub&gt;NMLZ&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
<th>Intransitive V&lt;sub&gt;NMLZ&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
<th>#</th>
<th>Transitive progressive VP&lt;sub&gt;NMLZ&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
<th>#</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ū-gáp ‘c3-slap’</td>
<td>ū-gáp ‘c3-slap’</td>
<td>(243)</td>
<td>gáp [d-ḍ = t t₃] slap [AG5-ASSOC = C6 ear]</td>
<td>(244)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-s-vāk ‘c4-greet’</td>
<td>s-s-vāk ‘c4-greet’</td>
<td>(240)</td>
<td>vāk [ s-` = u-nēŋgēn] greet [AG4-ASSOC = C7-old.man]</td>
<td>(241)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ār-gwā ‘c5-rescue’</td>
<td>ār-gwā ‘c5-rescue’</td>
<td>(n/a)</td>
<td>gwā [d-ḍ = wēn] rescue [AG5-ASSOC 3SG]</td>
<td>(242)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āt-rē ‘c6-eat’</td>
<td>āt-rē ‘c6-eat’</td>
<td>(n/a)</td>
<td>rē [d-ḍ = r-gā] eat [AG5-ASSOC = C5-cooked.grain]</td>
<td>(247)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūm-hāg ‘c6B-hear’</td>
<td>ūm-hāg ‘c6B-hear’</td>
<td>(233)</td>
<td>hāg = [d-ḍ = m-ʔ] hear = [AG5-ASSOC = C6B-shame]</td>
<td>(245)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As one can see, in the transitive progressive construction, only noun classes 4 and 5 retain the “expected” citation noun class marking on the associative. All other classes, class 3, 6 and 6B, use a default <i>d-</i> prefix on the ASSOC<sub>CXN</sub>. For example, in (243) the verb root <i>gáp</i> ‘slap’ is in an intransitive progressive construction, with no overtly expressed object (INTR). Notice that <i>gáp</i> ‘slap’ takes the class 3 nominalizing prefix <i>ū-</i>; the citation form of ‘slap’ is either <i>ū-gáp</i> ‘C3-slap’ or <i>āt-gáp</i> ‘C6-slap’.

Now consider (244), where <i>gáp</i> ‘slap’ occurs in a transitive progressive construction. This example is taken from the summary section of a folk narrative where the various animals are rejoicing at the end of the events of the story. Here, some animals are slapping their
ears as an indication of applause. The noun class marker cross-referencing the
nominalized verb ‘slap’ in the ASSOCP is class 5 d- (i.e., d-ɘ-t ‘AG5-ASSOC-C6’), and not
the “expected” citation class 3 u- that occurs in (244).\(^{38}\)

(243) \(\hat{e}\)-kʰèn ð ū-gáp
   C2-some PROG C3-slap
   ‘Some are slapping.’

(244) \(\hat{e}\)-kʰèn ð gáp d-ɘ=t tò
   C2-some PROG slap AG5-ASSOC=C6 ear
   ‘Some are slapping their ears.’ (FSC 2007:40)

Let us also consider the root hɔ́g ‘hear’. This verb is attested with two distinct noun
class prefixes in the intransitive progressive construction, namely class 6M ɘm-hɔ́g and
class 6 ɘt-hɔ́g; see (233) and (234). No apparent change in meaning is determined by the
variation in class prefix. However, when the verb root ‘hear’ occurs in the transitive
progressive construction, as in (245), neither the class 6M m- agreement prefix nor the
class 6 t- prefix occurs. Rather, class 5 d- occurs.

(245) wá ð-g hɔ́g =d-ɘ=m-ɘ?
   C1.3SG.SUBJ PROG-PST hear = AG5-ASSOC = 6M-shame
   ‘He was hearing shame/He was ashamed.’ (GK 2013)

In sum, verb roots such as ‘slap’ and ‘hear’ combine with a restricted set of noun
class prefixes in the intransitive progressive construction, but trigger an even smaller set
of noun class agreement morphology on the associative marker in the transitive
progressive construction.

\(^{38}\) If a head noun is class 3, it triggers a null prefix on the agreement form. The associative marker expected for class 3 agreement would have the form Ø-ɘ ‘AG3-ASSOC’. See Chapter IV, Table 26.
This reduction in agreement marking to \( d- \) and \( s- \) is unique to the transitive progressive auxiliary construction. Though other transitive auxiliary constructions also involve nominalizations, they do not trigger such reduced class agreement. Indeed, in other nominalized contexts that use the ASSOC\( C\)\( X\)\( N \), the agreement class marking on the ASSOC\( C\)\( X\)\( N \) is just like that found with noun roots. For instance, (246) contains a transitive future obligation auxiliary construction (§9.1), and the erstwhile object of the nominalized semantically main verb is “associated” to the nominalized head by means of the ASSOC\( C\)\( X\)\( N \). However, in the transitive future obligation construction, class 6 agreement is used; this parallels in every way the structure we saw for nouns in Chapter IV. In (246) the agreement prefix \( t- \) corresponds to the class of the citation form of ‘eat/eating’. In the progressive auxiliary construction in (247), the agreement marker must be class 5 \( d- \) and cannot be the class 6 \( t- \) that occurs in the transitive future obligation auxiliary construction. This is demonstrated by the ungrammatical example in (248). My consultants rejected the \( t- \) prefix in this example and with the \( t- \) prefix there was no acceptable reading with another meaning. In contrast, in order to use the \( \acute{s} \) progressive auxiliary and a transitive nominalized complement, the verb \( \acute{r} \) must be followed by the \( d- \) prefixed ASSOC\( P \) containing the object of the nominalized verb.

(246) \( \tilde{s}m \quad \text{dë?të} \quad \text{rë} \quad \text{t\text{-}r-gá} \quad \text{ūsōt} \)
1SG.SUBJ DEON eat AG6-ASSOC-C5-cooked.grain tomorrow
‘I must eat cooked grain tomorrow.’ (citation: \( \acute{β} \)-rë ‘C6-eating’)

(247) \( \text{wā} \quad \acute{s} \quad \text{rë} \quad \text{d\text{-}r-gá} \)
C1.SUBJ PROG eat AG5-ASSOC-C5-cooked.grain
‘He is eating cooked grain.’

(248) \*\( \text{wā} \quad \acute{s} \quad \text{rë} \quad \text{t\text{-}r-gá} \)
Intended: ‘He is eating cooked grain.’
In sum, Class 5 d- has come to be the most frequently used – if not required – marker in the transitive progressive construction, regardless of what class the same event-encoding lexeme would occur with in the intransitive progressive construction or in citation form.

Because of the strong semantic tendencies within the Út-Ma'in noun class system (cf. §3.1.2), we might expect that the shift to class 5 in the transitive progressive construction would have some semantic impetus. However, there is no known reason why nominalized verbs in the transitive progressive construction shift to class 5. In contrast, there does appear to be a semantic coherence to use of class 4 in the transitive progressive construction: most class 4 nominalized verbs in this construction refer to speech activities. Thus, class 5 may have arisen for most non-speech verbs in this construction simply in opposition to the strong semantic coherence of class 4 verbs.

In summary, the shaded cells in Table 33 show the class 4 and 5 associative agreement forms, which are the only ones used within the transitive progressive construction. This is a subset of those forms used with a nominalized verb as head in various nominalized contexts (cf. Table 28).

Table 33: ASSOC forms of the transitive progressive construction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF HEAD</th>
<th>NOUN CLASS OF SECOND NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>s- -u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>d- -u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>t- -u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6M</td>
<td>m- -u</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A few verbs do not trigger any agreement marking on the associative marker in the transitive progressive construction. This is further evidence of the shift away from the NP source to a distinct VP structure. In the transitive progressive auxiliary construction, the associative marking is the only evidence that the main semantic verb is nominalized. With the lack of, or loss of agreement marking for certain verbs, the construction is also losing evidence that the verb form ever was nominalized. In the next examples I demonstrate some of these “lost” agreement markers.

In Table 34, intransitive and transitive progressive constructions are contrasted for three verbs: zɔ̀ŋg ‘prepare’, wàr ‘tell’, and ʤàs ‘wash’. All three intransitive clauses have a noun class marker prefix. However, in the transitive clauses, no agreement marking occurs on the ASSOCP. Instead, only the associative low-tone on the epenthetic vowel ə precedes the object. Neither d- ‘AG5’ nor s- ‘AG4’ occurs. Here, also note that the lack of an agreement marker is not related to any morphological property of the object: it happens with objects with an overt noun class prefix, as with t-tʃwɔ̀ ‘C6-loads’, and with no overt noun class prefix as with Ø-hjɔ̀ ‘C2-guinea corn’, or with a pronoun object form like wà ‘C1.OBJ’.
In the TRAN examples in Table 34, the associative morpheme is still used but it is no longer marked for agreement. The loss of agreement reveals the ongoing change we see in the intransitive progressive construction, namely the loss of nominal prefixal morphology on what was a nominalized semantically main verb (§7.3.1.1.2).

A possible further step in reanalysis may be the loss of the ASSOCP altogether, not just the agreement marker on the associative. With the borrowed root karantẹ ‘read’ (<Hausa karanta) in (249), there is no indication that the ASSOCCXN occurs at all. This needs further exploration, as this could also be a unique case because of the fact that the verb is a borrowed form.

(249)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>AUX</th>
<th>V_NMz</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>AUX</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>ASSOC</th>
<th>P</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wā</td>
<td>ọ̀</td>
<td>m-karantẹ</td>
<td>wā</td>
<td>ọ̀</td>
<td>karantẹ</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>ū-rān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1.SUBJ</td>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>C6M-read</td>
<td>C1.SUBJ</td>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>ASSOC</td>
<td>C3-paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘He is reading’ | ‘He is reading a paper’ |
Changes in agreement marking are found only in auxiliary constructions and are not attested in other nominalized verb contexts. Even though the shift in agreement marking is apparently proceeding lexical item by lexical item, all change is in one direction, namely toward reducing the nominal properties of the construction. As the agreement marking on the ASSOCCxns disappears, the semantically main verb phrases are less identifiable as having been nominalized and the resultant form of the lexical predicate is indistinguishable from a verb. This is certainly the case of kārštē ‘read’ in (249).

The variation allowed in agreement marking on ASSOCPs in the transitive progressive auxiliary construction are summarized in Table 35.

Table 35: Changes in agreement marking in the Ut-Ma'in transitive progressive construction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 4 verbs</th>
<th>AGREEMENT CLASS CORRESPONDS TO CITATION CLASS PREFIX</th>
<th>CLASS 5 AGREEMENT PREFIX</th>
<th>ASSOCIATIVE MARKER OCCURS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 5 verbs</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most verbs from classes 3, 6, and 6B</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some verbs from classes 3, 6, and 6B</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6B verb ‘read’</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The changes evident in the progressive are: (i) nominalized verbs in citation classes 3, 6, and 6M shift to class 5; (ii) a few verbs lose agreement marking altogether; (iii) one verb loses the associative marker as well. The transitive progressive construction is clearly moving away from its predicate nominal source.
7.3.1.2.2 Limitation on the ASSOCCXN

In the transitive progressive construction there is an additional piece of evidence that the construction is shifting away from it’s nominal source. This evidence is related to a limitation on the use of the ASSOCCXN. In Chapter IV §4.4 we saw that the ASSOCCXN can express a range of meanings, and could be used to express both a patient complement and a goal complement of a nominalized verb (cf. (118). This is not true with the associative occurs as a required part of the progressive construction. In the transitive progressive, the ASSOCCXN can only express the patient object of the semantically main nominalized verb. To express goal complements in the progressive, speakers must use a prepositional phrase for the goal, as in finite main clauses. Thus, in both (250) and (251), the goal argument ū-tšḻ ‘C3-market’ of the verb hā ‘go’ is in a locative phrase marked by the high-tone preposition δ ‘LOC’.

(250) wā δ m-hā δ ū-tšḻ:
    C1.SBJ PROG C6M-go LOC C3-market
‘He is going to the market.’

(251) hē:b-št = rī hā-ːg δ tūḻː-ː māhūtā
    friend-c6 = 1sg.poss go-PST LOC market-c3 Mahuta.town.POSS
‘My friend went to the Mahuta market’

In the next section, I turn to the morphosyntax of the ditransitive progressive auxiliary construction.

39 See note regarding forms of ‘market’ on page 90.
7.3.1.3  **Ditransitive progressive auxiliary construction**

The ditransitive progressive construction follows the patterns of the transitive progressive construction: tense may be marked on the auxiliary verb; and no prefix occurs on the nominalized verb but rather nominalization is apparent from the use of the ASSOC CXN following the main lexical verb. Word order and subject properties are as in other constructions; the \( R_{\text{OBJ}} - T_{\text{OBJ}} \) order of main clauses is maintained. In the ditransitive, only the linearly first post-verbal object is coded by the ASSOC CXN, as seen in (232). If either object is fronted for focus, the fronted argument is not contained within an ASSOC P, but the remaining in situ argument is within an ASSOC P.

\[
\begin{aligned}
S & \quad \text{AUX-TNS} & V & = [AG-ASSOC \ R_{\text{OBJ}}] \quad T_{\text{OBJ}} \\
(252) & \quad \text{ṣm} & \quad \text{ʒ-gə} & \quad \text{jā = d-ʒ} & \quad \text{wən} & \quad \text{ār-gā} \\
& \quad 1\text{SG.SBJ} & \quad \text{PROG-PST} & \quad \text{give = AG5-ASSOC} & \quad 3\text{SG} & \quad \text{C5-cooked.grain}
\end{aligned}
\]

‘I was giving him cooked grain.’

Some verbs, such as \( k\text{̣sə} \) ’show’ in (253), require the associative marker but do not trigger agreement. The citation form of ‘show’ is in class 6 \( ʒt-k\text{̣sə} \), seen in other nominalized contexts such as in (254); but no noun class marking is attested in the progressive, either with or without expressed arguments. In (253), there is almost no indication of the nominal status of the V even though it is a Progressive. The only indicator of the progressive is the auxiliary.

\[
\begin{aligned}
(253) & \quad wə = \text{ʒ} & \quad k\text{̣sə} = \text{ʒ} & \quad wən & \quad ʤəb-ʒ & \quad jāz-ʒ \\
& \quad C1.\text{SUBJ} = \text{PROG} & \quad \text{show} = \text{ASSOC} = 3\text{SG} & \quad \text{heart-C3} & \quad \text{red-AG3}
\end{aligned}
\]

‘He is mistreating her.’ lit: ‘He is showing her red heart.’ (PW_IY_Ror_2013: 037)

\[
\begin{aligned}
(254) & \quad wə & \quad hēsə & \quad t-k\text{̣sə} \\
& \quad C1.\text{SUBJ} = \text{start} & \quad C6-\text{show}
\end{aligned}
\]

‘He began teaching’ (JF_2015: L43)
7.3.1.4 Summary of progressive auxiliary constructions

Figure 31 summarizes the various morphological forms of the intransitive, transitive and ditransitive auxiliary constructions. The choice of the prefix on the nominalized verb in the intransitive is dependent on the lexicalized citation form of the particular verb. Some verbs can occur in the intransitive progressive without any noun class prefix. This loss of nominal marking is indicated in Figure 31 by the schematized clause structure in the solid thick-lined box at the bottom of the intransitive progressive section.

The choice of agreement prefix on the associative marker in the transitive progressive construction is also lexically determined: verbs with class 4 and class 5 citation-forms continue to use their citation form in the progressive, but all other verbs with citation forms in C3, C6, and C6B default to the class 5 agreement marker دائ- in the transitive progressive. Some verbs from citation classes C3, C6, and C6B no longer use any agreement marking on the ASSOCP. At least one C6B verb does not use the associative marker at all in the transitive progressive construction. These modifications of nominal marking are indicated in Figure 31 by the schematized clause structure in the two rows within the solid thick-lined box at the bottom of the transitive progressive section.

Ditransitive progressive constructions are rare, as there are fewer ditransitive verbs. Figure 31 includes the form of a class 5 citation form verb that uses the AG5 prefix دائ- on the ASSOCP complement of the progressive auxiliary. All known ditransitive verbs have their citation form in class 5 or noun class 6. The ditransitive progressive auxiliary construction of a class 6 citation form verb has no agreement.
Figure 31: Summary of the Progressive Constructions in Ut-Ma'in

marker on the ASSOCP within the progressive construction. This change from the “expected” nominal marking is indicated in Figure 31 by the schematized clause structure in the solid thick-lined box at the bottom of the ditransitive progressive section.
As the noun class prefixes and the noun class agreement forms are apparently gradually being dropped in the progressive auxiliary constructions, it leaves only the progressive auxiliary as the one unified indicator of the progressive construction.

7.3.2 Affirmative future constructions

In this section I introduce the intransitive (INTR) and the transitive (TRAN) future auxiliary constructions. I also include in this section what I call the t-future construction that has no future auxiliary and uses a distinct paradigm of pronouns for its S/A argument; but like the auxiliary constructions, the t-future uses a nominalized verb phrase for the main semantic predicate. The transitive (TRAN) t-future construction also makes use of the ASSOCP to encode the object of the nominalized verb.

The future auxiliary is dé ‘FUT’. The likely source of the dé auxiliary is the motion verb déʔɛ ‘travel, go’. The clause structure with this auxiliary is identical to what has already been illustrated for the progressive, i.e. the auxiliary is followed by a nominalized verb phrase.

Example (255) shows an intransitive future auxiliary construction. The verb ‘greet’ is in its nominalized form, prefixed with the class 4 s- . The future time adverbial ùsét ‘the day after tomorrow’ further indicates the future time interpretation of the clause, although this adverbial is not required, as shown in (256).

(255) ɘ̄m dé s-všk ùsét
       1SG.SUBJ FUT C4-greet day.after.tomorrow
‘I will greet the day after tomorrow.’

(256) ɘ̄m dé s-ɾs-všk
       1SG.SUBJ FUT C4-greet
‘I will greet.’
The transitive future auxiliary construction patterns like the transitive progressive auxiliary construction. The transitive semantically main verb is nominalized and heads an ASSOC which contains the semantic P argument. Verbs with a nominal citation form in class 4 occur with the expected class 4 agreement marking.

(257) ūm dé všk = s- = u-něngēn
1SG.SUBJ FUT greet = C4-ASSOC = C7-old.man
‘I will greet the elder (man)’

Nominalized verbs with citation forms in other classes occur with class 5 agreement marking on the ASSOCP. The future thus patterns like the transitive progressive construction described in §7.3.1.2. To illustrate, in (258) class 5 agreement marking occurs on the verb ‘write’, even though the citation form of the verb ‘write’ is class 6 ūt-gēn ‘C6-write’.

(258) ūm dé gén = d- = u-rān
C1.SG.SUBJ FUT write = AG5-ASSOC = C3-leaf
‘I will write a letter.’ (elicited SJ DY 2017)

We now turn to the auxiliary-less t-future construction. Like the future auxiliary construction, the t-future construction uses a nominalized verb phrase for the semantically main predicate element. In the intransitive t-future construction, the subject is juxtaposed to a t- prefixed verb form. Note that this t- is identical to the noun class 6 prefix ūt-. If the subject is 1SG, the object or focus form of the pronoun must be used, as in the clause mé = t-ha ‘I will go’ underlined in (259).\textsuperscript{40}

\textsuperscript{40} Class marked pronouns occur in this position with the high-tone marked object form. Personal pronouns other than 1SG, have the same form for both subject and object forms (cf. Chapter III §3.4 and Chapter V §5.3), so they show no difference in the t-future construction.
173

(259) sē wáʔ-ʂ = wá zũ t̥iʔ ŕ-ũsõ mē = t-hå
then child-c1 = c1.POSS say okay c1-father 1SG.FOC = FUT-go

‘then his (second) child said, “okay, father, I will go.”’ (MT_draft_2019: 21.30)

I recognize this as a nominal construction for two reasons; (1) the form of the
prefix on the associative marker is identical to the class 6 noun class prefix, and (2) in
the transitive, the prefix does not occur on the verb; rather the agreement prefix is on
the ASSOCP which contains the P argument. In (260), the ASSOCP is underlined, and the
P argument is bracketed. In this case, the P argument is an entire finite clause.

\[
A V FUT-ASSOC = [P]
\]

(260) a. mé tʃwàn t̥= [m] já bõ
1SG.FUT love C6-ASSOC = 1SG.SUBJ give 2SG
‘I will love to give you’

b. wáʔás = d-ũ n̄m = ŕ w̥-t̥ = u-kstå
story = C5-ASSOC thing = ASSOC put-PFT-FOC = C7-guinea.fowl
‘a story of what makes the guinea fowl’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 001-002)

7.3.3 Type I Negative Auxiliary Constructions

In this section I describe the negation strategy for Type I auxiliary constructions.
Recall from Table 31 that both the progressive and the future auxiliary constructions
have a shared negation pattern using the negative-copula-turned-negative-auxiliary verb
zã ‘NEG.Aux’ and the clausal negator enclitic =\textit{da}.\textsuperscript{41} This is one of the structural reasons
to group the progressive and future together.\textsuperscript{42}

\[\]

\textsuperscript{41} The tone of the negative enclitic =\textit{da} varies from utterance to utterance. Transcriptions are marked for
the tone that occurs in each example.

\textsuperscript{42} Chapter IX deals with auxiliary constructions that only use the enclitic clausal negator =\textit{da}.
To state the facts in more detail, to negate a progressive or future auxiliary construction, the negative auxiliary *zá* occurs in the AUX slot, replacing the ‘PROG.AUX’ or ‘FUT.AUX’ auxiliary. This occurs immediately between the S/A argument and the nominalized main semantic predicate. To illustrate, in (261) the negative auxiliary construction is in bold and the two negator elements are underlined. The semantically main predicate is of citation class 6B, marked *m-hā ‘C6B-go’*. The co-occurrence of two negative markers can be explained from the nature of the clause: it contains the nominal negator *zá ‘NEG.AUX’* because the predicate is in nominal form; and it contains the clausal negator *=da ‘NEG’* because the entire structure is clausal.

(261) a. wāʔ-ṣ = rò  zā  ōm = zā  m-hā = dā...  
    child-C1 = 3SG.POSS  say  1SG.SUBJ = NEG.AUX  6B-go = NEG  
    ‘His child said “I am not going”... 
  
    b. sē  ēsō-ṣ  dḕè  5dō = wō  ū-yō rõmsē...  
    then father-C1.SUBJ go  GOAL = 1SG.REL  C3-second  
    ‘then father went to the second (one)...  
  
    c. sē  wāʔ-ṣ = wā  zā  tōʔ  ū-ēsō  mē = t-hā  
    then child-C1 = C1.POSS  say  okay  C1-father  1SG.FOC = FUT-go  
    ‘then his (second) child said, “okay, father, I will go.”’ (MT_draft_2019: 21.29-30)

The negative transitive Type I auxiliary construction follows the pattern we have seen for progressive and future auxiliary constructions. Principally, the nominal prefix that is part of the intransitive negative Type I auxiliary does not occur on the verb. Instead, the nominalized status of the semantically main predicate is deduced from the occurrence of an ASSOCP that contains the object of the nominalized verb. In (262) the transitive negative Type I auxiliary construction is in bold; the negative auxiliary *zá* and
the negative clausal enclitic =da are underlined; the ASSOCP containing the P argument
is in [square] brackets.

\[
\begin{align*}
A &= \text{NEG.AUX} & V & \text{[ASSOC = P]} &= \text{NEG} \\
\text{(262)} & \quad \text{á} = m & \text{wār} & n\dddot{s} & n\dddot{=}z\dddot{ā} & jā & [\dddot{b} = t-n\dddot{īp}] = dā \\
\text{COND} = 1\text{SG.SUBJ} & \text{tell} & 2\text{SG} & 2\text{SG} = \text{NEG.AUX} & \text{give} & \text{ASSOC} = \text{C6-truth} = \text{NEG} \\
& \quad \text{‘If I tell you, you will not believe me’ (JF.2015: L352)} \\
& \quad \text{lit: ‘If I tell you, you will not give truth.’}
\end{align*}
\]

The negative ditransitive Type I auxiliary construction patterns like the transitive,
using the ASSOCP to mark the object in closest proximity to the verb (see also §7.3.1.3
for a parallel description of the affirmative ditransitive progressive construction). In
(263), the negative ditransitive Type I auxiliary construction is in bold. In this example
the speaker has shortened the negative auxiliary zā to the single segment d=, which is
cliticized to the preceding subject and the following verb.\(^\text{43}\) The two negative elements
are underlined; the R argument within the ASSOCP, \(d-\dddot{b} = w\dddot{ā} \quad \text{‘AG5-ASSOC = C1.OBJ’}\), and
the T argument \(r-g\ddot{5} \quad \text{‘C5-cooked.grain’}\), are in [square] brackets.

\[
\begin{align*}
A &= \text{NEG.AUX} = V & \text{[AG5-ASSOC = R]} & \text{[T]} &= \text{NEG} \\
\text{(263)} & \quad nā = z\dddot{ā} & nā = d = njā & [d-\dddot{b} = w\dddot{ā}] & [r-g\ddot{5}] = dā \\
\text{INDEF.SBJ} = \text{say} & \text{NSPEC} = \text{NEG} = \text{give} & \text{AG5-ASSOC} = \text{C1.OBJ} & \text{C5-marriage} = \text{NEG} \\
& \quad \text{‘Someone said, “He will not be given marriage.” ’ (YM_JY_2013:007)} \\
& \quad \text{lit: someone said “they will not give him marriage” OR “they are not giving him marriage”}
\end{align*}
\]

Example (264) shows a ditransitive negative auxiliary construction with a fronted T
argument. In (264), the negative ditransitive Type I auxiliary construction is in bold. In
this example, the voiced alveolar stop [d] is used in place of the [z] of the negative

\[
\begin{align*}
A &= \text{NEG.AUX} \quad V & \text{[AG5-ASSOC = R]} & \text{[T]} &= \text{NEG} \\
\text{(264)} & \quad nā = z\dddot{ā} & nā = d = njā & [d-\dddot{b} = w\dddot{ā}] & [r-g\ddot{5}] = dā \\
\text{INDEF.SBJ} = \text{say} & \text{NSPEC} = \text{NEG} = \text{give} & \text{AG5-ASSOC} = \text{C1.OBJ} & \text{C5-marriage} = \text{NEG} \\
& \quad \text{‘Someone said, “He will not be given marriage.” ’ (YM_JY_2013:007)} \\
& \quad \text{lit: someone said “they will not give him marriage” OR “they are not giving him marriage”}
\end{align*}
\]

\(^\text{43}\) Recall from §6.2.3 that there is some variation in the pronunciation of the initial consonant of the
negative copula zā (here used as the negative auxiliary); some speakers use the fricative /z/, some the flap
/r/, and some the stop /d/.
auxiliary zá. The two negative elements are underlined; the R argument within the
ASSOC, ₄ b₃ ‘ASSOC 2SG’, and the fronted T argument kwàt-u in-yá ‘ring-C7 DEM-C7’
are in [square] brackets.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\textbf{[T]} \quad \textbf{A} = \text{NEG.AUX} \quad \textbf{V} = [\text{ASSOC R}] = \text{NEG} \\
\text{mùsá zà} \quad [\text{kwàt-u in-yá}] \quad \text{₃m = dà̂} \quad \text{₃g = ₃} \quad \text{b₃ = dà̂} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{PN say} \quad \text{ring-C7 DEM-C7 1SG.SUBJ = NEG loan = ASSOC 2SG = NEG} \\
\text{‘Musa said, “That ring, I will not loan to you...” (MA_IY_Ror_2013: 012-013) }
\end{array}
\]

Having now addressed both affirmative and negative Type I auxiliary constructions, the
next section turns to surveying Type II Auxiliary Constructions.

### 7.4 Type II Auxiliaries: Progressive + Lexeme Constructions

The data contained in this section were discovered within texts. Given currently
available data, not all transitivity or polarity values can be displayed for each
construction.

There are two Type II auxiliary phrases, and a possible third auxiliary in
development. I call these “auxiliary complexes” or “auxiliary phrases” since they are
structurally made up of at least two morphemes from different word classes. I consider
them to be auxiliaries because the function of the complex/phrase is to indicate an
aspectual meaning for the entire clause.

The first element of the Type II complex auxiliary word is the copula-turned-
auxiliary ₄. The two Type II auxiliary complexes take the forms ₄tëk ‘being in the
middle of’, which has a progressive interpretation, and ₄m₄t ‘being about to’, which has
an immediate future interpretation. The source of the element tëk is likely the
preposition ₄tëk ‘in the middle of’. The source of the element m₄t is likely the
nominalized verb ₄t-m₄t ‘C6-divide’. All three are assumed to be negated by the zá
‘NEG.AUX’, as is the case with all other clause types that use the ɔ́ copula-turned-auxiliary (see §6.2.3 and §7.3.3).44

7.4.1 ‘in midst of’ auxiliary construction

To form the ‘in the midst of’ auxiliary complex, the element tēk ‘middle/between’ occurs immediately following the progressive auxiliary, resulting in the form ɔ́tēk ‘PROG2’ with a progressive meaning. When the clause is syntactically intransitive, the main semantic verb is nominalized and occurs with its lexically specified citation class prefix. For example, in (265) the nominalized verb is ɔ́tēká ‘C6-pick’, which is also the citation form for this verb.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S & ɔ́ = tēk & c6-V \\
(265) & wā = tēk & ɔ́tēkā, jākān tjāhā = jā tē:-n ēdām ū-kēkē \\
\end{array}
\]

C1.SUBJ PROG = middle C6-pick C7-there man = C7 arrive-DIST LOC = top C3-bicycle

‘While he was in the middle of picking (fruit), a certain man arrived on a bicycle.’

(SS_PS_Ror_2013: 013-014)

The same verb kā ‘pick’ is used in a transitive structure in (266). The class prefix does not occur on the nominalized verb, but we know that the semantically main verb is nominal because an agreement-marked ASSOCP expresses the object of the nominalized verb. The agreement marker on the ASSOCP in this example is d- ‘AG5’, paralleling the restrictions on the transitive progressive auxiliary construction which, with the exception of noun class 4, only occurs with d- ‘AG5’ marking regardless of the citation

44 There are no negative examples of these Type II auxiliary complexes within the current text corpus. The ɔ́ = s-sā ‘want’ verb complex has a similar form with a distinct function, described in Chapter VIII. There the ‘want’ complex is shown to use ɔ̀dā and =dā in the formation of negative clauses.
form of the nominalized verb (see §7.3.1.2). (For discussion of how the class markers behave in nested ASSOCCXNS, see chapter 4.)

\[
\begin{align*}
A & \delta = \text{tēk} & V = [\text{AG5-ASSOC} \ [P \ ]] \\
(266) & \text{wā} \; \delta = \text{tēk} & \text{ká} = [\text{d-ð} \ [\text{já} \; t-ð = \text{s-tē}] ] \\
& \text{C1.SUBJ PROG = middle} & \text{pick = AG5-ASSOC} & \text{fruit} & \text{C6.AG-ASSOC = C4-tree}
\end{align*}
\]

‘He is in the middle of picking fruits of trees.’ (SS_PS_Ror_2013: 003)

### 7.4.2 Immediate future ‘about to’ auxiliary construction

The immediate future ‘about to’ auxiliary is composed of ā plus māt. Example (267) demonstrates the intransitive immediate future auxiliary construction. It is unclear whether the = t that cliticizes to māt is a noun class marker for the verb ‘stand’, or whether it is related to the juxtaposed t-future construction (§7.3.2), demonstrated in (268) with the same verb ē:s ‘stand’.

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \delta = \text{māt} = \text{C6} ? & V \\
(267) & \text{ū} & \delta = \text{māt} = \text{āt} & \text{ē:s} \\
& \text{C7.SUBJ} & \text{PROG} = \text{IMM.FUT} & \text{stand}
\end{align*}
\]

‘He is about to stand.’ (T_VY_2017: 177)

\[
\begin{align*}
S = \text{FUT} & & V \\
(268) & \text{mē = t} & \text{ē:s} \\
& 1SG.FOC = \text{FUT} & \text{stand}
\end{align*}
\]

‘I will stand.’ (T_VY_2017: 177)

Example (269) demonstrates the ‘about to’ future auxiliary in a transitive construction. As expected for a transitive auxiliary construction, the nominalized semantically main verb occurs with no prefix, and the P argument is within an ASSOCP.
Chapter summary

In this chapter, I presented Type I and II auxiliary constructions which cover meanings of progressive, future, and immediate future. These auxiliary constructions are characterized by their use of a nominalized main verb following the auxiliary. The nominalized main verb is then structured by NP morphosyntax, including agreement marking on the ASSOCP used to convey the object of the nominalized main verb. Significant detail was presented regarding a shift from the nominal origins of the morphosyntactic patterns to the synchronic verbal construction.

In the next chapter, we turn to constructions that involve ‘WANT’. The ‘WANT’ verb form resembles the Type 2 auxiliaries, functions partly like a Type 2 auxiliary and functions partly like a matrix verb.
CHAPTER VIII

‘WANT’ PREDICATIONS

8.1 Introduction

This chapter presents the predication types that involve the copula plus nominalized verb expression of ‘WANT’. First, I present ‘want’ with NP complements (§8.2). Second, I present ‘want’ with nominalized verb complements; the ‘want’ verb and the nominalized verb must share the same subject (§8.3). Third, I present the ‘want’ verb with finite clause complements; these need not have the same subject, but same subject is accommodated (§8.4). Finally in §8.5, I discuss the negation of all ‘want’ predication types that uses the “double” negation strategy like the Type I and II auxiliary constructions in the previous chapter (Chapter VII).

The structure of the ‘WANT’-verb transparently involves the progressive auxiliary ɔ́ (Chapter VII §7.3) plus the nominal ɔ́s-sà ‘C4-desire, yielding the form ɔ́s:à ‘want’ An example of ɔ́s-sà can be seen as the complement of ɔ́tté ‘have’ in (270).

(270) ɔ́ka bɔ́ ɔ́tté s-sà
   like 2SG have C4-desire
   ‘…as you have desire’ (JF_2009: LP448)

The ‘want’-verb serves as a transitive verb as in example (271) and as a matrix verb as in (272).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>[P]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(271) ö́</td>
<td>ɔ́ = s-sà</td>
<td>[nɔ́m-ɔ́t = tɔ́]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2.SUBJ</td>
<td>PROG = C4-want</td>
<td>thing-C6.C6.DEF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   ‘They want those things.’ (MT_draft_2019: 6.07)
The structure of the ‘want’-verb is comparable in complexity to the Type II auxiliary complexes described in Chapter VII (§7.4), as it involves the ʤ ‘PROG.AUX’ plus another element. However, ‘want’ is distinct from the Type II auxiliary complexes since the “extra” element involves the prefixed form of a nominalized verb, not the bare root.

The ‘WANT’ predication constructions also differ from the multi-verb constructions described in Chapter VII in that the complement to the ‘WANT’ verb may have one of several forms: an NP complement (§8.2), a VP_{NMLZ} complement clause (§8.3), or a fully finite clause (§8.4). The VP_{NMLZ} complement only occurs when the nominalized VP and the ‘WANT’ matrix verb have the same subject. When the subjects have different referents, the ‘WANT’-complement clause is a fully finite clause.

All ‘WANT’ predications with clausal complements are distinct from the other multi-verb predication types presented in this study so far in that two events are always profiled: the event of ‘wanting’ and the event depicted in the ‘WANT’-complement.

8.2 NP ‘WANT’-complement

The verb complex ḋṣː̀ ‘want’ can take a NP complement, like nómọ́ tʃ ‘those things’ in (273), kwə́m də̀r ʃà́t ‘life’s riches’ in (274), or t-kwəm ‘C6-wealth’ in the negative ‘WANT’ construction in (254). In (254), the negative-copula-turned-negative-
auxiliary 珺 ‘NEG.AUX’ replaces the ₃ ‘PROG.AUX’ of the ‘WANT’-verb. In (276), we see that a pronoun can also serve as the P argument of ₃ₘ₃ ‘want’.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{A} & \text{V} & [P] \\
\end{array}
\]

(273) 珺 s-sà [nám-st=t]?
C2.SUBJ PROG = C4-want thing-C6.C6.DEF
‘They want those things.’ (MT_draft_2019: 6.07)

(274) á=bʒ s-sà [kwɔm d-ɔ=r-fát]
COND = 2SG PROG = C4-want wealth AG5-ASSOC = C5-life
‘If you want the life’s riches,...’ (RM_draft_2019: 9.5)

(275) wà zá=s-sà [t-kwɔm] = dá
C1.SUBJ NEG.AUX = C4-want C6-wealth = NEG
‘He does not want riches’ (JF_2009: LP101)

(276) gwɔp 珺 s-sà:[wá]
girl PROG = C4-want = C1.OBJ
‘a girl likes him (lit. a girl wants him)’ (YM_IY_Ror_2013: 011)

These examples show that, whatever its composition may be, synchronic ‘want’ can function as the lexically and syntactically main verb of a simple transitive clause. Given this, its ability to take a nominalized complement clause (discussed in the next section) suggests that it should be analyzed as a matrix verb, rather than as an auxiliary verb.

8.3 Nominalized same subject ‘WANT’-complement clauses

Nominalized same-subject complement clauses of ‘WANT’ can be syntactically intransitive (INTR), meaning there is no expressed object; or they can be syntactically transitive (TRAN) with an expressed object (cf. §5.1)
The difference in syntactic structure partly relies on whether the object of the nominalized complement clause occurs immediately after the nominalized verb. We see an INTR example in (277) where the P argument of the nominalized complement clause is fronted to the initial focus position (cf. §5.2). In (277), the ‘WANT’-matrix verb ọ́sà occurs in the typical V slot, immediately after the A argument, labeled $A_{\text{MATRIX/COMPL}}$.

The P argument of the ‘want’-matrix verb is a nominalized verb, $NP_{\text{NMLZ}}$ - labeled $P_{\text{MATRIX}}$. As a result, the nominalized complement verb has a noun class prefix (i.e., ọ́t- ‘C6’) – which is the characteristic INTR form.

$P_{\text{COMPL}}$  $A_{\text{MATRIX/COMPL}}$  $V_{\text{MATRIX}}$  $P_{\text{MATRIX}}$  

(277) ọ́ ọ́m ọ́ = s-sà ọ́t-nôme
C3.FOC 1SG.SBJ PROG = C4-want C6-do

‘It (the thing), I want to do.’ (RM_draft_2019: 9.16)

If a complement of the nominalized verb occurs immediately after the complement verb, the structure is syntactically transitive (TRAN). That is, an ASSOCOP containing the P argument or the goal complement follows the nominalized complement verb, as in (257).

$A_{\text{MATRIX/COMP}}$  $V_{\text{MATRIX}}$  $P_{\text{MATRIX}}$

(278) ọ́m ọ́ = s-sà hà = m-ọ sòkòtò
1SG.SBJ PROG = C4-want go = C6B-ASSOC sokoto.city

‘I want to go to Sokoto.’

A TRAN nominalized ‘WANT’-complement clause can also take a different form, where the P argument of the ‘WANT’-complement clause is coded by a possessive pronoun instead of being in an ASSOC$C_XN$. This only occurs when the P argument is a personal pronoun rather than a class marked pronoun (cf. §3.5).
The ɔ́sa ‘want’ verb form can express both present gnomic-time ‘wanting’ or it can be used for past time, even though the verb is not explicitly marked for past tense. Analogously to the fact that the temporal interpretation of the bare verb form in Ut-Ma'in can be determined by the time established by various lexical and grammatical in a particular discourse (Paterson 2015), the ɔ́sa ‘want’ predication constructions similarly can be interpreted as meaning past time if the discourse-level time interpretation has been established.45 For example, (281), taken from within a narrative text, has no overt marking for past tense. The translation reflects the past-time established four clauses earlier by the phrase dëkõn hɔ dɛ ‘a certain day’, which places the entire narrative in the past in relation to the speech time.

A = ‘WANT’-matrix [‘WANT’-complement]
[VR = T]
(280) wa = ́ = s-sà [nám vá = s-vèr]
C1 = PROG = C4-want do C1.OBJ = C4-clever
‘He wanted to deceive him.’ (lit: is wanting do him clever)
(MA_IY_Ror_2013: 007)

45 Although the ɔ́g "PROG.AUX.PST" past tense form of the progressive auxiliary exists (§7.3.1), there are no instances of a past tense marked form of the ‘want’ verb, i.e., *ɔ́gssa.
8.4 Finite clause complements of ‘want’

When the subject of the ‘WANT’-matrix verb is different from the subject of the complement clause verb, the complement clause must occur as a fully finite clause. This is illustrated by the underlined clause in (281). The entire clause [S V Goal]\(^{46}\) is the P argument of ősà ‘want’.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & V_{\text{MATRIX}} & \text{[Finite Complement Clause]} & P_{\text{MATRIX}} \\
(281) & 5m & 5 = s-sà & b5 & hǎ & 5 = sōkōtō \\
1SG.SUBJ & \text{PROG} = \text{C4-want} & 2SG & \text{go} & \text{LOC} = \text{sokoto.city} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘I want you to go to Sokoto’

A same-subject complement clause can optionally be fully finite. In (282), both the ‘WANT’-matrix verb and the complement clause of ‘WANT’ share the same referent as subject. But rather than a nominalized verb phrase that omits the subject of the complement clause, the subject pronoun wā ‘C1.SUBJ’ occurs and is co-referent with the proper name subject áwdù ‘Audu’ of the ‘WANT’-matrix clause.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
S & \text{PROG} = \text{C4-want} & [S = V = P] \\
(282) & dē-kōn & h5 = dē & áwdù & 5 = s-sà & wā = nām = m-hā \\
C5-there & \text{day} = C5 & \text{PN} & \text{PROG} = \text{C4-want} & \text{C1.SUBJ} = \text{do} = \text{C6B-journey} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘On a certain day, Audu wanted to go on a journey.’ (MA_IY_Ror_2013: 003-004)
(lit: ‘Audu is wanting he do journey’)

8.5 Negation of ‘want’ predication constructions

To negate a ‘WANT’-construction, the zá ‘NEG.AUX’ and the clause negator enclitic =da ‘NEG’ are used together. To illustrate, example (283) contains a negative

---

\(^{46}\) Here as elsewhere S indicates the single argument of an intransitive clause.
‘want’ construction with an NP complement, repeated from (275). The two negative elements are underlined; the NP object of the ‘WANT’-complement is in [square] brackets.

\[\begin{array}{ccc}
A & V & [P] \\
\text{(283)} & \text{wā} & \text{zā = s-sà} \\
\text{NEG.AUX = C4-want} & \text{C6-wealth = NEG} \\
\text{C1.SUBJ} & \text{[t-kwôm] = dā} \\
\end{array}\]

‘He does not want riches’ (JF_2009: LP101)

This double negation parallels the negation pattern used for Type I and II Auxiliary constructions described in Chapter VII(§7.3.3) and the negative predicate nominal constructions described in Chapter VI (§6.2.3).

Example (284) illustrates the negative ‘want’ construction that has a fully finite complement clause. Here the voiced alveolar stop [d] is used in place of the [z] of the negative auxiliary zā. The two negative elements are underlined; the fully finite ‘WANT’-complement clause is in [square] brackets.

\[\begin{array}{ccc}
A_{\text{MATRIX}} & \text{NEG} = V_{\text{MATRIX}} \\
\text{(284)} & \text{ū} & \text{dā = s-sà} \\
\text{C7.SUBJ} & \text{NEG.AUX = C4-want} & \text{NSPEC = DO} \\
\text{NEG.} & \text{[nā = nôm} & \text{wōm} & \text{5s-tōg] = dā} \\
\text{R_{COMP}} & \text{T_{COMP}} & \text{C4-pray = NEG} \\
\end{array}\]

‘She does not want them to pray for her’ lit: ‘she does not want they do her prayer’ (PW_IY_Ror_2013: 078)

\[\begin{array}{c}
47 \text{Recall from §6.2.3 that there is some variation in the pronunciation of the initial consonant of the negative copula zā (here used as the negative auxiliary); some speakers use the fricative } /z/, \text{ some the flap } /ɾ/, \text{ and some the stop } /d/.
\end{array}\]
CHAPTER IX

TYPE III: LEXICAL AUXILIARY CONSTRUCTIONS

Type III lexical auxiliary constructions are described in this chapter. What separates them from Types I and II described in Chapter VII is that only the clause final enclitic =da ‘NEG’ is used to negate these constructions. Type III auxiliary constructions make use of auxiliaries that are more lexically-contentful than the copula source of the progressive auxiliary, showing grammaticalization from lexical verbs to a lesser degree than Type I and Type II. The combined meaning of Type III auxiliaries plus nominalized verb phrase conveys only one event and has only one argument structure, as in the telic auxiliary construction shown in (285). Type III auxiliary constructions require the same subject for both the auxiliary and the nominalized semantically main lexical verb.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{A} & \text{Aux} & \text{V} & \text{P} \\
(285) & ðm & tām-ðg & bjōt & d-ð = w̃n \\
1\text{SG.SUBJ} & \text{touch-PST} & \text{encounter} & \text{AG5-ASSOC} = 3\text{SG.OBJ} \\
\text{‘I met him one time’ (SJ_BB_Ror_2017:87)}
\end{array}
\]

Intransitive Type III auxiliary constructions use a nominalized verb with a noun class prefix, as in the \( t-V \) structure in the future obligation construction seen in (286).

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{S} & \text{AUX} & \text{t-V} \\
(286) & ðm & dēʔtē & t-ʁē ūsōt \\
1\text{SG.SUBJ} & \text{FUT.OBL} & \text{C6-eat tomorrow} \\
\text{‘I must eat tomorrow.’ (elicited_SJ_BB_Ror_2013)}
\end{array}
\]

Transitive Type III auxiliary constructions make use of the ASSOCP within the nominalized verb phrase to encode the object, as in the \( t-\text{ASSOC} = \text{P} \) in the future obligation construction seen in (287).
For each section, I first show any non-auxiliary uses of the root which has also developed the auxiliary function (which I refer to as LEXAUX). The auxiliary use of a given root may be restricted to a particular inflected form of that root, i.e., the verb swá ‘drink’ is only used as an auxiliary when in the past tense form swáːg ‘drank’, but the verb tás ‘finish’ is attested as an auxiliary in both the tás ‘finish’ bare verb form and the tásːtɛ̀ ‘has finished’ perfect form. Table 36 presents the Type III auxiliaries described in this chapter, including their function, forms, and their likely lexical sources.

9.1 Future obligation auxiliary construction

The future obligation auxiliary is děːtɛ̀. This may be historically related to the future auxiliary dě (§7.3.2) with the addition of the perfect suffix -te. I believe both of these auxiliaries developed from the verb děʔè ‘go’.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{děʔè ‘go’} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{dě ‘FUT.AUX’} \\
děʔè ‘go’ & \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{děʔ + té ‘FUT + PRF/ will have’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{děːtɛ̀ ‘FUT.OBL/must’}
\end{align*}
\]

Figure 32: Possible pathway of development for the FUT and FUT.OBL auxiliaries
Table 36: Function, forms and likely sources of Type III Ūt-Ma'in auxiliaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Likely Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future Obligation</td>
<td>détè</td>
<td>FUT.OBL</td>
<td>déʔê ‘travel’, plus -tê ‘perfect’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habitual</td>
<td>hóptè</td>
<td>HAB.PFT</td>
<td>unknown, plus -tê ‘perfect’; only attested in auxiliary construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telic</td>
<td>tāṃɡ</td>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>tām ‘touch’, plus -ɡ ‘past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuative ‘go’</td>
<td>ʰó</td>
<td>GO.AUX</td>
<td>ʰa ‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuative ‘eat’</td>
<td>rē ūşš</td>
<td>EAT.AUX</td>
<td>literally ‘eat face’; calque of Hausa ci gaba ‘eat face’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuative ‘repair’</td>
<td>màŋ</td>
<td>REPAIR.AUX</td>
<td>màŋ ‘repair, resolve’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inchoative ‘start’</td>
<td>hēsè</td>
<td>START.AUX</td>
<td>hēsè ‘start’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Inchoative ‘start’</td>
<td>hēstè</td>
<td>START.AUX.PFT</td>
<td>hēsè ‘start’, plus -tê ‘perfect’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inchoative ‘begin’</td>
<td>tākɔn</td>
<td>BEGIN.AUX</td>
<td>tākɔn ‘begin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compleitive</td>
<td>tās</td>
<td>FINISH.AUX</td>
<td>tās ‘finish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Compleitive</td>
<td>tāstè</td>
<td>FINISH.AUX.PFT</td>
<td>tās ‘finish’, plus -tê ‘perfect’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequentative</td>
<td>swāɡ</td>
<td>FREQ</td>
<td>swá ‘drink’, plus -ɡ ‘past’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First, example (288) shows déʔè ‘go’ used as a main verb.

(288) wā = déʔè שקד מוסא
C1.SUBJ = go GOAL PN
‘He went to Musa.’ (MA_IY_Ror_2013: 005)

Example (289) presents an intransitive future obligation auxiliary construction. The clause is syntactically intransitive because there is no expressed object. When the clause is intransitive, the nominal status of the nominalized semantically main verb is marked by the noun class prefix, e.g., noun class 6 marked by the št- prefix in (289).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>Aux</th>
<th>št-V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(289) šm</td>
<td>détèe</td>
<td>št-rē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1SG.SUBJ</td>
<td>FUT.OBL</td>
<td>C6-eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‘I must eat tomorrow.’ (elicited_SJ_2013)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example (290) presents a transitive future obligation construction with the same nominalized semantically main verb found in (289). The expressed object in (290) is encoded in the agreement marked ASSOCXN. The noun class AG6 prefix agrees with the inherent noun class of the nominalized main semantic verb (the citation form of ‘eat’ is št-rē ‘C6-eat’). This is the agreement pattern expected within NPs, and it is a pattern that is distinct from the shift in agreement patterns seen for the progressive auxiliary constructions (§7.3.1.2.1). Recall that for the progressive, all agreement for class 6 nominalized verbs with overt object shifts to class 5 agreement marking.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>Aux</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>t-Assoc = O</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(290) šm</td>
<td>détèe</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>t-ḥ = r-gá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1SG.SUBJ</td>
<td>FUT.OBL</td>
<td>eat AG6-ASSOC = C5-cooked.grain</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‘I must eat cooked grain tomorrow.’ (citation: št-rē ‘C6-eat’)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example (291) shows a future obligation auxiliary construction embedded in a relative clause. Interestingly, the negative particle dà structurally negates the verb of the matrix clause, not the verb of the deontic relative clause.
9.2 Habitual auxiliary construction

The habitual auxiliary hopo translates to English as something close to ‘always occurs’. I treat this as a Type III auxiliary (LEXAUX) because it patterns with other Type III auxiliaries in providing an aspectual interpretation for the clause it which it occurs, portrays only one event, and the main semantic verb is in nominalized form, even though there are no non-auxiliary uses of this form or any form with similar meaning from which the auxiliary may have developed. That is, it doesn’t fit the “less grammaticalized” characterization of other Type III auxiliaries. To express the equivalent of the English adverb ‘always’, Ut-Ma’in NPs like ərhó ərbët ‘every day’ or ūdə əbët ‘all the time’ are used, as in the opening phrase of (292). Either the adverb or the auxiliary can be used to express the habitual. In the case of (292), both the Ut-Ma’in adverbial expression of ‘always’ and the Ut-Ma’in habitual auxiliary occur within the same clause.

Example (292) is from a text about a woman who is tormented by demons. The woman habitually hides from being seen (‘always sitting in the shade’) and habitually inflicts self-harm. Example (292) predicates two events of sitting in the shade and hitting her head on the ground; the first repeats the root for ‘sit’ to emphasize the continuous nature of ‘sitting’.

(291) ūm nák bē = [də ɨt dët:ɛ nɔm = d-ə tɔrəm] də
1SG.SUBJ know.PST place-AG5.REL 1PL.EXCL FUT.OBL do = AG5-ASSOC meeting NEG
‘I do not know the place [at which we will meet.]’ MinnaText (2013:14.170-18.050)
(lit: ‘I knew the place [of must doing of meeting] not.’)
The transitive clause in (292b) uses the ASSOCCXN inside of the nominalized VP; the entire nominalized VP occurs immediately after the auxiliary ʰóɾ ʰóɾ ‘always’. We know that the complement of ʰóɾ ʰóɾ ‘always’ is nominal because any complements of the semantically main verb are within ASSOCPs.

### 9.3 Telic auxiliary construction

The verb root ᵗᵃᵐ ʰóɾ ‘touch’ can be used as an auxiliary, with the semantically main verb in a nominalized structure. As an example of the verb ᵗᵃᵐ ʰóɾ ‘touch’ used as the main semantic verb in a simple clause sense, see (293).

(293)  
S V P  
ná-jó  tám-ðg  hí = d- ` = u - zúr  
cow-C7.SUBJ  touch-PST  head = AG5-ASSOC = C7-lion  
‘Cow touched the head of Lion.’ (Primer 2009)

As an auxiliary ‘touch’ gives a telic meaning of ‘having occurred once in the past’, as shown with the semantically main verb ʰjóɾ ʰjóɾ ‘encounter’ in example (294).

(294)  
S V P  
ðm tám-ðg  hjó  d-  = wðn  
1SG.SUBJ  touch-PST  encounter  AG5-ASSOC = 3SG.OBJ  
‘I met him once’ (SJ_BB_Ror_2017:87)

In example (295) the adverbial numeral phrase ʰʰ-s₃ ʰʰ-gàn ʰʰ-C3-time C3-one’ further emphasizes the one-time occurrence of the event of ‘eating cooked guinea corn grain’.

192
Negation of a telic auxiliary construction uses the clausal final negator \( =dá \) ‘NEG’; compare the transitive clauses in (296) and (297). Notice that, at least in these particular examples, the associative marker is a pro-clitic on the object in the affirmative clause but is an enclitic to the nominalized verb in the negative clause. I make no claim here that a negative clause “causes” the shift in the locus of the associative marker.48

(296) \( \text{5m} \quad \text{tám-ɗg} \quad \text{bjòt} \quad \text{d-ɗ} = \text{wǎn} \)
1SG.SUBJ touch-PST encounter AG5-ASSOC = 3SG.OBJ
‘I met him once’ (SJ_BB_Ror_2017:87)

(297) \( \text{5m} \quad \text{tám-ɗg} \quad \text{bjòt} = \text{d-ɗ} \quad \text{wǎn} = \text{dá} \)
1SG.SUBJ touch-PST encounter = AG5-ASSOC 3SG.OBJ = NEG
‘I did not meet him (even) once’ (SJ_BB_Ror_2017:89)

9.4 **Continuative auxiliary constructions**

There are three continuative auxiliary constructions. The first two use roots that still clearly function also as lexical verbs; as auxiliaries, the following semantically main verb is in a nominalized form. The third continuative uses a phrase calqued from Hausa

---

48 More work is needed to understand the preferred syllable structure and the subsequent pronunciation of the associative marker in its various functions.
ci gaba ‘eat front’; in Út-Ma’in it is calqued as rè ūʃ ‘eat face’. The semantically main verb is also nominalized but is within an accompaniment construction.

9.4.1 GO.AUX continuative construction

The auxiliary $hð$ ‘GO.AUX’ likely comes from the root $hã$ ‘go’. Example (298) shows $hã$ as the only verb of the clause; here it is marked for past tense.

(298) $hð$:b-št = ri $hã$:g ñ tǔl:š-ù māhūtā
friend-c6 = 1sg.poss go-PST LOC market-c3 Mahuta.town.Poss
‘My friend went to the Mahuta market.’

When used as an auxiliary, $hð$ ‘GO.AUX’ gives a meaning of continuous motion of the S/A argument while simultaneously doing the action encoded by the nominalized complement. That is, it expresses a kind of associated motion. The continuous motion can be further emphasized in the discourse by the use of repeated clauses. For example, $hð = t-kðbðr$ ‘go picking’ is repeated four times in (300), and the entire clause in (301) is repeated twice by the narrator as he describes the movement and repeated action of ‘removing’ feathers.

(299) a. $ã = wá tʃʃz-ñn-é,$
COND = C1 come.down-DIST-DEP
‘When he came down from up high,

S GO.AUX = C-V
b. dà-ù = ñ $wá$ $hð = t-dàʔas$ $ñ = t-kð:r$
time-c3 = C3.DEF C1.SUBJ go.AUX-c6-pour LOC = C6-basket
‘now he went pouring (fruits) into a basket.’ (IY_Ror_PS_2013: 007-008)

When syntactically intransitive, the main lexical verb’s nominalized form is marked by a noun class prefix. In examples (299) and (300), the GO.AUX clauses are syntactically intransitive, but the understood P participant is recoverable from discourse
(again Fillmore (1986: 96) definite null complements). In both cases, it is clear from context that ‘fruit’ is the undergoer of the action of $t$-$dάʔs$ ‘$C6$-pour’ in (299) and $t$-$kόbr̥$ ‘$C6$-pick’ (300).

$$\begin{align*}
\text{(300)} & \text{ a. sē w̃n h̃-n ūr-k̥r̥=nē} \\
& \text{ then 3SG.SUBJ go-DIST C5-basket = with} \\
& \text{ ‘Then, one came with a basket’} \\
& \text{ S GO.AUX = C-V GO.AUX = C-V} \\
\text{ b. ō hō t-k̥br̥ hō t-k̥br̥} \\
& \text{ LOC SAME.SUBJ go.AUX = C6-pick go.AUX = C6-pick} \\
& \text{ ‘and goes picking (fruit), goes picking,’} \\
& \text{ GO.AUX = C-V GO.AUX = C-V} \\
\text{ c. hō t-k̥br̥ hō t-k̥br̥} \\
& \text{ go.AUX = C6-pick go.AUX = C6-pick} \\
& \text{ ‘goes picking, goes picking.’ (IJ\_PS\_Kuur\_2013: 009)}
\end{align*}$$

A syntactically transitive complement of a GO.AUX is in (301). The main lexical verb occurs without the noun class prefix, but it can be identified as nominal because its P argument is within an ASSOCP, here marked for class 5 agreement.

$$\begin{align*}
\text{(301)} & \text{[šhāmōʔkʰstʃán]} \\
& \text{ A = GO.AUX V [P]} \\
& \text{ ūn = hō mōʔr d-š = s-ʃn} \\
& \text{ 3PL = go.AUX remove AG5-ASSOC4-feather} \\
& \text{ ‘they went on removing the feathers’ (GF\_2007\_IT\_Juur: 0092)}
\end{align*}$$

**9.4.2 PREPARE.AUX continuative construction**

The second continuative auxiliary is $māŋk$. This comes from the verb $māŋk$ that can mean a range of things from ‘repair’ to ‘prepare’ to ‘reconcile’. Example (302) shows the bare verb form of $māŋk$ used as the main and only verb of a basic clause; example (303) shows $māŋk$ with the perfect suffix -tē ‘PFT’ with the addition of a goal
complement in this example giving the idea of ‘reconcile’ between parties. As an auxiliary, màŋk is only attested in the bare verb form.

(302) ŋn màŋk nám t-òs wós
3PL prepare thing AG6-ASSOC = C4 smell
‘They prepared the spices.’ (JF_2009: LP423)

(303) wā màŋk-tè t-nēt ɗt-bē=:t ɗdō ū-rō
C1.SUBJ reconcile-PFT C6-people AG6-all GOAL C3-god
‘He reconciled all people to God.’ (JF_2009: LPIN13)

The verb màŋk ‘repair/prepare’ can be used as an auxiliary to indicate that an action that had started in the past is continuing or repeating in the present. There is an element of perseverance on the part of the characters carrying out this continued action, for example they may refuse to be thwarted by the actions of others. Both (304) and (305) are intransitive. The lexical verbs are both in nominalized form with the noun class 5 prefix.

S REPAIR.AUX C-V
(304) nēt-ŋ = wā màŋk ɗr-mō-ŋn
person-C1 = C1.DEF CONT.AUX C5-return-DIST
‘That person continued to return from far.’ (PW_IY_Ror_2013: 048)

S REPAIR.AUX C-V
(305) á = tɔŋ = nè màŋk ɗr-hā-ŋn
C2 = pray = with CONT.AUX C5-go-DIST
‘The pastors continued to come.’ (PW_IY_Ror_2013: 048)

9.4.3 EAT.AUX continuative construction

In Ut-Ma’in the EAT.AUX auxiliary has the form rè ⃣fɔ ‘eat face’. This is a calque from Hausa ci gaba ‘eat front/continue’. First, in (306) the verb rè ‘eat’ occurs as a
lexical verb, carrying the past tense marker and demonstrating the non-auxiliary use of this verb.

(306) wā ré-ŋ ŋr-gá giŋp.
    C1.SUBJ eat-PST C5-cooked.grain yesterday
    ‘He ate cooked grain.’

The structure of the EAT.AUX construction is unique among the Ut-Ma‘in auxiliary constructions. As an auxiliary, rê ‘eat’ must occur with the noun ŋ-ŋ ‘c3-face’ in the expression ‘eat face’ to produce the meaning of ‘continue’. The main semantic verb of the clause is nominalized and is contained within an accompaniment construction. The form of the accompaniment construction is Ș VP_{NMLZ} = nè ‘LOC VP_{NMLZ} = with’. The accompaniment construction is used as an oblique in other clauses, as in (307) where it is an oblique within a predicate numeral construction.

(307) rem = d-Ș ā-s-ūs Ș = ŋ-gān [Ș = [kàng-nè] = nè]
    tongue = AG5-ASSOC C2-C4-PN COP = C5-one LOC = PN-C2 = with
    ‘Language of the Us people is one with Kag people.’ (UW_Us_2017: 1.15-1.17)

In the intransitive EAT.AUX construction, the semantically main lexical verb is nominalized and marked with a noun class prefix, like m-ŋh ‘C6B-go’ in (308). The nominalized verb form again occurs within an accompaniment construction.

(308) wā rē = ŋ-ŋh [Ș = [m-hā] = nè]
    C1.SUBJ eat = C3-face LOC = C6M-go = with
    ‘He continued going.’ (lit: He eats forward with going.)
    (PS_PS_Ror_2013: 014)

In the transitive, there is no prefix on the semantically main lexical verb, but the P object is encoded in an ASSOCP, d-Ș = tɔkɔn mɔŋgɔr tɔ ř ‘C5-ASSOC some mango fruits’ in
(309). The entire nominalized verb phrase occurs within an accompaniment construction.

A  EAT.AUX  [LOC  [VP_{NMLZ}

(309)  a. wā  rè = ʊʃ 3-
C1.SUBJ  eat = C3-face  LOC  pick-DIST = C5.AG-ASSOC

] = with]

b. tɔkɔm  mɔŋgɔ  tɔ3 = nɛ
c6.some  mango.fruit  c6 = with

‘He continued picking some mango fruits.’
(lit: He eats forward with picking from far some mango fruits.)
(PS_PS_Ror_2013: 007-008)

9.5 Inchoative constructions

Two inchoative constructions exist. These came to light when a consultant was asked to emphasize the beginning of the process of ‘building a big house’.49

9.5.1 START.AUX inchoative construction

The verb héstè ‘start’ may be used intransitively as the only verb of the clause. The activity ‘started’ is implied from context. In (310b), the main and only verb is héstè ‘start’; the activity that started is recoverable from the previous clause (310a).

(310)  a. wa  tɔp = ě
C1.SUBJ  pay = C2.OBJ

‘he paid them,’

b. tɔmsɔ  wā  héstè  dɔgɔ  ámɔvɔstè  m-há  ártɔkɔn = nɛ
also  c1.SUBJ  start from last.ones  c6B-going  first.ones = with

‘also, he started from the last ones going to the first ones.’ (PTY_draft_2019: 20.8)

49 There are no instances of these verbs used as auxiliaries in the narrative texts available for this study.
This intransitive example is the closest to a non-auxiliary use of héstê ‘start’ found in the corpus. There are no examples of héstê ‘start’ used transitively and occurring with a non-activity complement. For example, there are no instances of héstê ‘start’ used in parallel to the English start dinner, where the complement of start is an NP with no reference to an activity only the noun object (Heine 1991: 048).

Heine (1991: 48) points out that some linguists, specifically Freed (1979:83) and Brinton (1983: 82-84), consider English terms such as begin, continue and stop as “aspectualizers” related to the event that could be coded by a noun complement (e.g., dinner is actually a reference to starting the event of preparing dinner or eating dinner). With this in mind, it is possible to understand the Ût-Ma’in example in (310b) as an instance of an elided nominalized complement.

When used as an auxiliary, the verb héstê ‘start’ is followed a nominalized form of the semantically the main lexical verb. In (311), an INTR use of héstê ‘start’. The nominalized complement is t-kósê ‘C6-show’.

(311) wā héstê t-kósê
     C1.SUBJ start C6-show
     ‘He began teaching’ (JF_2015: L43)

In (312) we see a TRAN use of héstê ‘start’. The semantically main verb phrase is bracketed in (312). One can tell that the verb mā ‘build’ is nominalized because it takes its P argument in an ASSOCP marked for class 5 agreement.

A = START.AUX [VP ]
(312) wā = héstê [mā = d-h = bū-ū ját-ʌ]
     C1.SBJ = START.AUX build = C5-ASSOC = house-C3 big-C3.AG
     ‘He starts to build a big house’ (elicited SJ_2017_GD_519-521)
9.5.2 **BEGIN.AUX inchoative construction**

The word *tàkôn* can be used as a noun meaning ‘beginning’, as a verb meaning ‘begin’ with an elided nominalized complement, or as an auxiliary meaning ‘begin’ with a nominalized complement containing an activity predicate. In (313), the noun is used within an oblique adverbial phrase. In (314) the verb is used intransitively as the main and only verb of the clause.

(313) ̀r-tàkôn = ne = ́ rwánà nɔŋ bɔ̀ ɔ̀k
C5-beginning = with = DEP PN DO.PST 2SG pride

‘In the beginning, Rwana made you proud.’ (RW_IT_Jiir_2007: 028)

(314) nā tàkôn õ gāriri
NSPEC begin LOC PN

‘They began in Galili.’ (PTY_draft_2019: 10.37)

When used as an auxiliary, as in (315), the verb *tàkôn* ‘begin’ takes the semantically main lexical verb as a nominalized complement. In (315) the nominalized complement verb is *mā* ‘build’. Again, we know it is nominalized because it takes its P argument in an ASSOC marked for class 5 agreement.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{A} = & \text{BEGIN.AUX} \\
\text{VP} = & [ \text{ } ]
\end{align*}
\]

(315) wā tàkôn mā-d-ð = bů-ũ ját-ð]
C1.SUBJ BEGIN.AUX build = C5-ASSOC = house-C3 big-C3.AG

‘He begins to build a big house’ (elicited SJ_2017_GD.493-495)

9.6 **FINISH.AUX completive construction**

The verb *tàs* ‘finish’ may be used as an intransitive lexical verb, a transitive lexical verb, or as an auxiliary. The verb *tàs* ‘finish’ is used intransitively in (316) where it the main verb of a clause after several related activities, in this case “creation” activities.
Three lines later, the auxiliary use is demonstrated through the same verb \( tás = tè \) together with a ditransitive nominalized verb phrase as its complement.

\[
(317) \quad nā = tás = tè \quad jā = d-ð \quad kó = ū-jān \quad ū-nām \\
\text{NSPEC = FINISH.AUX = PRF} \quad \text{give = AG5-ASSOC} \quad \text{each = C3-one} \quad \text{C3-thing} \\
\text{‘They finished giving everyone each a thing (a body)’ (BT_IT_Jiir_2007: 010)}
\]

Example (318) shows the perfect form of FINISH.AUX together with an intransitive nominalized verb phrase; the main lexical verb is in a nominalized form with a class 5 prefix, \( r-rwẽn \) ‘C5-exit’.

\[
(318) \quad \text{a. sē \ korj-ðø \ rwën \ ūr-vastè} \\
\text{then guinea.fowl-C7.SUBJ exit C5-last} \\
\text{‘then guinea fowl came out last} \\
\]

\[
\text{b. ... kāhín \ wān \ tās-tè \ r-rwën.} \\
\text{before 3SG FINISH.AUX-PRF C5-exit} \\
\text{‘... before he had finished coming out.’ (GF_IT_2007: 071,076)}
\]

Example (319) shows the bare verb form of FINISH.AUX with a transitive nominalized verb phrase. The semantically main lexical verb is \( sāk \) ‘cook’; we know it
is nominalized because its P argument is in an ASSOC, *d-Ŋ Ŋt-kútŋkû ‘C5-ASSOC C6-sweet.potatoes’.*

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & \text{FINISH.AUX} & \text{[VP}_{\text{NMLZ}} & \hline
\end{array}
\]

\[wā\ bit, nā tās sāk = [d-Ŋ Ŋt-kútŋkû]\]

C1.SUBJ meet NSPEC finish cook = AG5-ASSOC C6-sweet.potato

‘(as) he met (them), the sweet potatoes were finished being cooked’

lit: ‘he meet, they (NSPEC) finish cooking of sweet potatoes’

(KM_IY_Ror_2013: 003)

### 9.7 **DRANK.AUX frequentative construction**

The inflected verb *swáŋ* ‘drank’ can be used in an idiomatic expression indicting a frequently occurring event, which we will see in (323). First, (320) illustrates *swáŋ* ‘drink’ as a main lexical verb of a simple transitive clause; (321) shows the past tense form *swáŋ* ‘drank’ as the main verb of a simple transitive clause.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & V & P & \text{LOC} \hline
\end{array}
\]

\[nā \swá\ mé \ ĕr-dù\]

NSPEC drink 1SG.OBJ C5-well

‘They drink me from the well.’ (SFC_IT_Jiir_2004: 024)\(^{50}\)

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A & V & P \hline
\end{array}
\]

\[nět-Ŋt t-ůn-tô \swá-Ŋg këʔ = da\]

person-C6 C7-DEM-C6 drink-PST beer = NEG

‘Those people didn’t drink beer.’ (PTY_draft_2019: 2.15)

Interestingly, the verb ‘drink’ is often used metaphorically in a phrase that translates as ‘suffer’ or ‘struggle’ with the object *ŋr-kɔb ‘C5-lack’, as shown in (322).

---

\(^{50}\) This example comes from a text where Mr. Frog is describing how people hate him (i.e., find him in their drinking water) but how he was the first creature that God created.
When used as an auxiliary, it does not convey a necessarily emotional or challenging activity. The auxiliary use of ‘drink’ is effectively neutral regarding a value judgment. It only conveys a meaning of a frequently occurring activity; this is best translated into English as ‘often’.

As an auxiliary, ‘drink’ is only attested in the past tense form swá-g. The frequentative auxiliary occurs in the same position as other auxiliaries and, as in (323), we know that the semantically main lexical component is nominalized because the P argument is within an ASSOCXN.

(323) 1SG.SUBJ DRINK.AUX-PST encounter C5-ASSOC = 3SG.OBJ

‘I often encounter him.’ (lit: I drank encountering of him)

9.8 Chapter summary

In this chapter I presented Type III auxiliary constructions. These constructions convey a range of aspects. Transitive nominalized verbs take objects marked by an ASSOCXN like Type I and II auxiliary constructions described in Chapter VII. Distinct from Type I and II auxiliary constructions, Type III auxiliary constructions do not
require “double” negation. Rather they are negated in the same way as basic verbal predication clauses.

In the next chapter, I present the varied constructions involving the verb *nɔm* ‘do’.
CHAPTER X

‘DO’ PREDICATIONS

The verb ɔm ‘do’ is involved in a variety of constructions: an intransitive construction, a transitive construction, a ditransitive construction, idiomatic expressions, and a formulaic presentational construction used to introduce characters at the outset of folk narratives. This chapter explores the various uses of ɔm and the various meanings of those constructions. Of particular interest to the main focus of this dissertation is the use of ɔm to predicate activity nouns.

Activity nouns are distinct from nominalized verbs. A nominalized verb can be used as the main and only verb in a basic predication clause (Chapter V). An activity noun can only be a predicate when assisted by an auxiliary verb (Chapters VI and IX), or as we see in this chapter by the verb ‘do’. For instance, in the elicited examples (324) through (329), the root anak ‘work’, citation form ɔm-àŋk ‘c6b-work’, can be a predicate with the assistance of ɔm in (324) or with the progressive auxiliary as in (325). But ‘work’ cannot be the main and only verb of a basic clause in the bare verb form (326) or in the perfect form (328); this is demonstrated by the ungrammatical examples. ‘Work’ is also clearly a noun that can serve as the argument of another verb, as with the clause initial argument of the existential clause in (329).

(324) ɔm nɔm-tɛ ɔm-àŋk
1SG.SUBJ do-PFT C6B-work
‘I have done work.’

51 No tone is indicated in running English prose for ɔm ‘do’ because the tone of the verb is dependent on the construction in which it is used. Tone is indicated on each construction schema and in each example.
(325) wā ‘$m$-āŋk
   C1.SUBJ PROG = C6B-work
   ‘He is working.’

(326) wā ‘$\bar{s}$-g = $\bar{s}$m-āŋk
   C1.SUBJ PROG-PST = C6B-work
   ‘He was working.’

(327) *$m$ ‘$m$-āŋk
   Intended: ‘I work.’

(328) *$m$ ‘$m$-āŋktè
   Intended: ‘I have worked.’

(329) ‘$m$-mè  $\bar{s}$ró  ü-tát
   work-C6B.SUBJ EXT C3-many
   ‘There is much work.’ (lit: ‘Work exists many’)

This seems to suggest that $\bar{s}m$-āŋk ‘C6B-work’ is not a nominalized form, but must be
an activity noun. The transtive and ditransitive $nəm$ constructions are one way to
express $\bar{s}m$-āŋk ‘C6B-work’ as a predicate.

In this chapter, I make a distinction between nominalized verb and activity noun.
Both can be used with $nəm$ to form a predicate. If a word is called an activity noun, I
have specific evidence that that word can not be used as the main and only verb of a
basic clause.

10.1 Forms and functions of $nəm$

The verb $nəm$ has a range of meanings dependent on the construction in which it is
used. When used intransitively as a syntactically main verb, $nəm$ can communicate
‘happened’ or ‘was done’, as in (330).
When used transitively as a syntactically main verb, and if the P argument is a physical object, *nɔm* indicates ‘make’ in the sense of ‘create’ or ‘bring into being’, as seen in (331). In somewhat idiomatic English the translation could be either ‘do’ (332) or ‘make/create’ (333) when the P argument names an activity. Crucially, the tone on *nɔm* is Low when *nɔm* has a physical item noun as its P argument, as in (331), but whenever *nɔm* has an activity noun or a nominalized verb as its P (or T argument if the clause is ditransitive; see (334)), the tone of *nɔm* is always high.52

When used ditransitively, the documented sense of *nɔm* in the corpus is ‘do (an activity)’; in example (334) the lexical activity is encoded in the nominal Ꝿ-kêr

---

52 Many of the auxiliary verbs described in Chapters VI and VII have a high tone on the auxiliary in their auxiliary function. Perhaps the high tone is part of the grammatical structure that allows a multi-verb predication. Tone alternation of verb roots is an area for future investigation.
'C3-whistle'. This nominal occurs in the same structural position in the clause as does the T argument of other ditransitive clauses (cf. §5.1). The entity that is the goal argument of the ‘do-whistling’ activity occurs in the same position as the R argument of other ditransitive clauses.

(334)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>V</th>
<th>R&lt;sub&gt;GOAL&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
<th>T&lt;sub&gt;ACTIVITY&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ė</td>
<td>kōb ĕ</td>
<td>ñm</td>
<td>w̃n  ū-kēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2.SUBJ took C2.SUBJ do</td>
<td>3SG C3-whistle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘they took (the hat) and they whistled at him’
lit: ‘they took and they did him whistling.’ (SJ_PS_Ror_2013: 36)

If the T argument of a ditransitive clause contains an nominalized verb, an object (of the nominalized verb) can be included. If an object of the nominalized verb is included, it is contained in an ASSOC<sub>CXN</sub>. In (335), the semantically main event concept of the clause is expressed by the nominalized verb ūm-ség ‘C6B-loan. The object of ‘loan’ kwátù ìnjà ‘ring.C7 DEM.C7’ is contained within the ASSOC<sub>P</sub> that follows the noun ‘loan’. The ASSOC<sub>P</sub> is headed by the agreement marked associative marker =m-ð ‘C6B = ASSOC’.

(335)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S = V = R&lt;sub&gt;GOAL&lt;/sub&gt;</th>
<th>[T&lt;sub&gt;ACTIVITY&lt;/sub&gt; ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b̃ = ñm = mé</td>
<td>ūm-ség = m-ð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2SG = do = 1SG.OBJ</td>
<td>C6B-loan = C6B-ASSOC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘ “... you loan me that ring...’ (lit: ‘you do me loaning of that ring’) (MA_IY_Ror_2013: 010)

---

53 This is an activity noun. There is no verb meaning ‘to whistle’.  

208
10.2 Tense marked forms of nɔm

The verb nɔm ‘do’ can be marked for past or perfect tense. Past tense nɔm can have form nɔ́g as in (333) or nɔ́mɔ́g as in (336). Perfect tense nɔm has the form nɔ́mtè as in (337) and (338).

(336) ðm nɔ́m-ɔ́g ðm-ãŋ kₖp.
1SG.SUBJ do-PST C6B-work yesterday
‘I worked (lit. did work) yesterday.’ (elicited SJ_DY_IY 2017: p88)

(337) ð wā nɔ́m-tè m-ãŋk
and C1.SUBJ do-PFT C6B-work
‘and he had done work’

(338) ka=m nɔ́m-tè m-hā ð mínà
as = 1SG.SUBJ do-PFT C6B-go LOC PN
‘As I have travelled (lit. have done going) to Minna.’ (Minna_IY_Ror_2013: 001)

10.3 Negation of nɔm

To negate a nɔm construction, the clause final negator enclitic da is used, as in (339). In this respect, nɔm constructions follow the Type III auxiliary constructions (Chapter VIII).

(339) wɔn nɔŋ s-rɛm dā
C1.SUBJ do.PST C4-word NEG
‘he did not say anything’ (lit: he did words not) (MP_PS_Ror_2013: 034)

10.4 Idiomatic uses of nɔm

The verb nɔm is used in several idiomatic expressions, as illustrated in (340) and (341). In (340) ‘do sitting’ is a common lexicalized expression for ‘decide’. This is related to the position of the decision maker in traditional society. The local king must
be sitting on a designated rock, as specified for his specific village when he is speaking his judgment as king.

In (341) ‘do him day of sins’ a common lexicalized expression for ‘forgive’. This is likely a reference to an annual day of atonement observed by communities in the Ut-Ma’in speaking area.

10.5 Presentational impersonal \textit{nām}

The verb \textit{nām} is also commonly used in a presentational impersonal construction as shown in (342). To introduce a central character at the start of a narrative,\(^{54}\) an impersonal subject pronoun \textit{nā} occurs together with the past tense marked form of \textit{nām} ‘do’.\(^{55}\) The impersonal construction is described more fully in Chapter V §5.5. The impersonal pronoun \textit{nā} is behaves structurally as an A argument. \textit{nā} always precedes the verb; the presented character occurs in the P argument position immediately after the verb.

\(^{54}\)I have not encountered this construction mid-narrative at the point of arrival of a new character. Presentational impersonal constrictions seem limited to establishing central main characters at the start of the narrative.

\(^{55}\)In the Fer and Jir dialects, the pronoun \textit{ā} is used instead of \textit{nā}. See additional discussion in §5.5.2.
The character introduced is contained within an NP as the complement to *nɔm*. In this construction, *nɔm* is always in a past tense form, either *nɔmɘ̀g* or *nɔŋ*.

\(\text{A V [P]}\)

(342)  
nā  nɔm-ɘ̀g  [jàkõñ  nētā = jā]  
NSPEC  do-PST  c7.there  woman = c7  
‘There was a certain woman’

δ  ðkõñ  bō  ŋ]  
LOC  c3.there  town  c3  
‘in a certain town.’ (SR_SJ_Ror_2013: 001)

### 10.6 Summary of *nɔm* constructions

The *nɔm* constructions are diverse in their functions. They vary across intransitive, transitive, and ditransitive structures. The *nɔm* constructions are displayed collectively in Figure 33 (not including the idiomatic expressions involving *nɔm*). The function of a particular construction is listed in the first column, separated from the form of the construction by a thick dark line. The presentative ‘did’ construction (§10.5) is specified for past tense, but all other *nɔm* constructions can have a bare verb, past tense or perfect tense verb form; this is indicated by “(TNS)” following *nɔm* in each construction schemata. Intransitive ‘happen’ has no complement. Transitive ‘make/create’ (‘come into being’) has a noun naming a physical item as the P argument. Transitive ‘do’ has an activity noun or nominalized verb as its P argument. Ditransitive ‘do’ has a goal or benefactive argument as its R argument and an activity noun or nominalized verb as its T argument. Presentative ‘do’ has an impersonal subject and the “presented character” follow *nɔmɘ̀g/nɔŋ* ‘did’.
Figure 33: ˈnom ‘do’ predication constructions in ʕUt-Ma‘in

Among the ˈnom constructions, transitive and ditransitive ‘do’ are most like the auxiliary constructions described in Chapters VII and IX. In these constructions, ˈnom functions like an auxiliary, with an activity noun or nominalized verb expressing the main semantic predicate of the clause. With ˈnom, ditransitive constructions are different from ditransitive progressives in terms of the order of constituents. These properties are summarized in Table 37 and demonstrated in the examples below.

Table 37: Comparison of ‘do’ and PROG ditransitive constructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSTRUCTION LABEL</th>
<th>CONSTITUENT ORDER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ˈnom ‘do’ DITRANSITIVE</td>
<td>A&lt;sub&gt;DO&lt;/sub&gt; DO R&lt;sub&gt;DO&lt;/sub&gt; [V P]&lt;sub&gt;T&lt;/sub&gt;DO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROGRESSIVE DITRANSITIVE</td>
<td>A PROG V R T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In (343), the ˈnom ‘do’ verb has an R and a T argument; but the nominalized verb that is the head of that T argument has its own event structure. It has a P argument embedded within an ASSOCCXN within the nominalized verb phrase. The order of constituents is A<sub>DO</sub> ˈnom R<sub>DO</sub> [V P<sub>OBJ</sub>]<sub>T</sub>DO. Altogether, the nominalized verb and the
matrix verb have two distinct argument structures, revealing the two-event nature of \( nɔm \) ditransitive constructions.

\[
\begin{align*}
A_{\text{do}} &= nɔm = R_{\text{do}} \\
[V, P]_{\text{do}}
\end{align*}
\]

(343) \( bɔ = nɔm = mέ \quad 5m-ség = m-ð \quad kwàt-ù \quad ín-jà \)

\[
\begin{align*}
2\text{SG} &= \text{do} = 1\text{SG.OBJ} \\
\text{C6B-loan} &= \text{C6B-ASSOC} \quad \text{ring-C7 DEM-C7}
\end{align*}
\]

‘“... you loan me that ring...” (lit: ‘you do me loaning of that ring’)

(MA_IY_Ror_2013: 010)

In the progressive example in (344), the progressive auxiliary ɔ and the nominalized verb \( jā \) ‘give’ have one event structure and one argument structure. The order of all constituents is A Aux V R T. The associative marker precedes the R argument in (344), whereas in the preceding \( nɔm \) example, no associative marker is necessary because the R argument is an argument of the matrix verb, and not of the nominalized verb.

\[
\begin{align*}
A \quad \text{PROG} \quad V \quad R \quad T
\end{align*}
\]

(344) \( 5m \quad 5-gd \quad jā = d-ð \quad wən \quad 8r-gá \)

\[
\begin{align*}
1\text{SG.SUBJ} \quad \text{PROG-PST} \quad \text{give = AG5-ASSOC} \quad 3\text{SG} \quad \text{C5-cooked.grain}
\end{align*}
\]

‘I was giving him cooked grain.’
CHAPTER XI
THE MYSTERY OF “MOVING” AFFIXES IN NORTHWEST KAINJI

11.1 Introduction

In Chapter III §3.1.3 of this study, we saw how the morphological shape of the Ūt-Ma'in noun word varies in terms of the placement of the noun class marker based on the morphosyntactic environment in which it is used. In Chapter V §5.3 we saw that alignment patterns in Ūt-Ma'in also depend on the structure of the NP: specifically, unmodified nouns exhibit a distinct pattern from modified NPs (cf. Chapter V Figure 18). Unmodified noun subjects have a noun class suffix; unmodified noun objects have a noun class prefix.

How did this come to be? Why do unmodified noun subjects have a noun class suffix and unmodified noun objects, a noun class prefix? Why does this distinction dissolve when the noun is modified? How does understanding the variation of noun class marking within the NP (Chapter III) help us understand the suffixed noun class marking that occurs on an unmodified noun subject?

In this chapter I propose that the source of the suffixed noun class marking on the unmodified noun subject is a relative clause with a relativized subject. Structurally, there is no change in the form of the relative clause; the relativized subject is reanalyzed as the subject of a main clause. The relative pronoun already marked for agreement with the noun class of the head noun is reanalyzed as a subject marker.
First, I establish that patterns seen in Ḫt-Ma'in are not unique to this one language. At least two other closely related languages, C’Lela [dri] and Ḫt-Hun [uth], exhibit similar behavior related to the placement and varied form of noun class markers.

Second, I argue that the suffixed noun class marking on S/A arguments functions as overt morphological nominative (NOM) case and that the prefixed noun class marking on P arguments functions as overt morphological accusative (ACC) case. Further, the unique form and function of the Ḫt-Ma'in NOM case marking and the prolific functions/locations of the ACC case marking are organized into a Type 2 Marked Nominative system according to the criteria proposed by König (2006: 657-658; 2008: 8&158): (i) A and S are treated the same and simultaneously different from P, (ii) the ACC form is used as the citation form, and (iii) specific to a type 2 Marked Nominative system, both case forms are morphologically marked; however, the ACC is additionally functionally unmarked (used in a wide range of functions). The NOM in contrast is used in a very restricted set of functions.

Third, I argue that noun class marking is a required element of the NP, not of the noun word. Almost all NPs have an indication of the noun class of the head noun; the exceptions being a few instances of null marked class (cf. Chapter III §3.1.1). Overt case marking manifests as a particular form of the noun class marker (distinct segmental and tonal forms) plus the location of the noun class affix (as a suffix for S/A arguments and as a prefix for P arguments). This overt case marking is only a feature of an NP argument if that NP argument has no modifier; when modifiers occur in the same NP, no case distinction is made, i.e., the alignment system is neutral (cf. Chapter V §5.3.1). The use of overt morphological case marking is not a feature of a clause type nor is it
TAM designation nor reflective of one; it is entirely dependent on the structure of the NP. König (2006: 658) uses the term “split language” when there is both a case system and neutralizations of the case system because of a certain condition, such as definiteness in Wolaitta (North Omotic) or even NP structure such as in Dinka (Western Nilotic). The Ūt-Ma'in case system can be considered a Type 2 Split Marked Nominative system that has all case distinctions neutralized in modified NP structures.

Fourth, I argue that the prefix-marked form of the ACC is the historical form of the noun word, matching the “expected” Niger-Congo prefixed noun class word form. The potentially innovative suffix-marked NOM form is the result of reanalyzing a relative clause structure as main clause syntax. In order to make this comparison, I describe the synchronic grammar of Ūt-Ma'in relative clauses and discuss possible pathways of development from relative clause to main clause syntax.

11.2 “Moving” affixes in other Northwest Kainji languages

Ūt-Ma'in is not the only Northwest Kainji with noun affix “mis”-behavior. As early as 1967, Hoffmann (1967: 252-254) wondered at the mystery of the “moving” noun class affixes for a C’Lela [dri] and Ūt-Hun [uth], Northwest Kainji cluster languages closely related to Ūt-Ma'in. This was in contrast to his previous studies of Kambari languages (also a Kainji sub-family neighboring the Northwest Kainji groups, cf. Chapter1 Figure 1), whose noun class affixes are always predictably prefixes. At the

56 McGill and Blench (2012: 99) include seven distinct Kambari languages. Hoffmann (1963a&b) were studies of the Cishingini/Tshishingini variety also known as Central Kambari.
conclusion of his C’Lela noun class description, he dedicates a final section to pondering the relationship between prefix and suffix class systems among the languages of West Africa. Hoffmann (1967: 253) states:

Here [for both C’Lela and Ūt-Hun] the single noun presents a picture that we have come to regard as typical for a prefix-type class language, viz. with the class prefix as an *obligatory* component of the word… and not at all optional… Nevertheless this class prefix *disappears* in Dakarkari [C’Lela] (and in Duka [Ūt-Hun]) in the moment the noun becomes the head of an extended nominal group with a qualifier marked by concord following it. (square brackets and italics mine; parentheses original author)

In C’Lela and Ūt-Hun the “obligatory” noun class prefixes “disappear” when the noun is modified by other NP internal elements.

Heath and Heath (2002: 53) describe the “movement” of the Ūt-Hun noun class affixes as a “flip”. This is a slightly different perspective focused on the grammatical function of the noun: “Simplistically, the class marker is before the noun when the noun is the object of the verb, and it follows the noun when the noun is the subject of the verb.” In further description of NP structures, Heath and Heath (2002: pp. 55) state that “when a modifier is present, the position of the CM[class marker] is not a function of the syntactic position of the NP”. Their data show that nouns occur with suffixed noun class markers of two distinct forms – in Heath and Heath’s (2002: 57) terms, affixed CM [class markers] and GCM [genitive class markers] which are “used to show the relationship between two or more nouns.”

These phenomena noted by Hoffmann (1967) and Heath and Heath (2002) are true of Ūt-Ma'in. The presence of modifiers correlates with the placement and shape of the
noun class affix, and the grammatical function of a noun correlates with the placement
and shape of the noun class affix.

11.3 Type 2 Split Marked Nominative in Üt-Ma'in

Üt-Ma'in is a Type 2 Split Marked Nominative language as defined by König
(2006: 657-658). When (i) a language treats S/A (NOM) the same and simultaneously
differently than P (ACC), (ii) the ACC form is used as the citation form, and (iii) the ACC
form is the functionally unmarked form of the noun, i.e., used in a wider range of
grammatical functions, then case marking in that language is called Marked Nominative
(König 2006: 657-658; 2008: 8, 158). Marked Nominative languages exhibit an
alignment pattern similar to an accusative pattern. When a language has an accusative
pattern, the nominative is typically the citation form of the noun; in a Marked
Nominative pattern, the citation form is the accusative (König 2006: 657).

In Üt-Ma'in the suffixed noun class marking on S/A arguments functions as overt
morphological nominative (NOM) case, and the prefixed noun class marking on P
arguments functions as overt morphological accusative (ACC) case. The Üt-Ma'in NOM
case marking suffix has a very restricted occurrence, i.e., the word form it creates is
used for very few functions. In contrast, the ACC prefixed word form is used in a wide
number of functions, including as the citation form of the noun. By König’s (2006: 658)
definition, Üt-Ma'in is a Marked Nominative language because it meets the criteria in (i)
through (iii) listed above. Criterion (i) is demonstrated in §11.3.1; criteria (ii) and (iii)
are demonstrated in §11.3.2.
By König’s (2006: 658) definition, Ùt-Ma'in is considered a Type 2 Marked Nominative language because both the NOM and ACC forms have overt morphology. This is demonstrated in §11.3.2.

In §11.3.3, we see that case distinctions are neutralized when modifiers occur within the NP. By König’s (2006: 658) definition, Ùt-Ma'in is thus considered a Type 2 Split Marked Nominative language.

11.3.1 Morphological evidence of Marked Nominative

Unmodified Ùt-Ma'in subject NPs occur with suffixed noun class marking, analyzed and labeled here as nominative (NOM). The S argument in (345) and the A argument in (346) are both marked by the noun class 7 suffix -jé ‘C7’. Unmodified object NPs occur with prefixed noun class marking, analyzed and labeled here as accusative (ACC). The P argument in (347) is marked by the noun class 7 prefix ā- ‘C7’.

(345) sē [kɔ́ːːt-jé] rwën ĕr-vástè
then guinea.fowl-c7 exit C5-last
‘Then a guinea fowl exited last.’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 071)

(346) käña [kɔ́ːːt-jé] zé-té… [ĕr-kjât ĕr-kjât ĕr-kjât]
there guinea.fowl-c7 say-PFT C5-difficult C5-difficult C5-difficult
‘There a guinea fowl has said, “Difficult, difficult, difficult.” ’
(GF_IT_Juur_2007:093&095)
The different affix order and forms of the C7 class marker in (345) through (347) can be interpreted “case marking”, since the same lexical item has a different form depending on whether it is in subject (S/A) or object (P) role. The word order and the affixation type of noun class marking serve to identify the syntactic role of each argument.

Examples (348) and (349) show a partial pattern for noun class 6 with the noun for ‘mangos’ with citation form īt-māŋgər ‘C6-mangos’. The structures of the bracketed NPs in (348) and (349) are distinct from each other in regards to the location of the noun class marking: the S argument of (348) is marked by the noun class 6 suffix -tē ‘C6’; the P argument of (349) is marked by the noun class prefix īt- ‘C6’. A different noun, īt-nēt ‘C6-people’ is shown as the A argument in (350) to complete the paradigm for noun class 6. We can see that the the noun class 6 suffix -tē ‘C6’ marks the A argument in the same way that it marked the S argument in (348).

S-NOM V
(348) [māŋgər-tē] āzgə-s-tē mango.fruit-C6.SUBJ pour-REP-PFT
‘Mango fruit rolled out (of the basket).’ (PS_PS_Ror_2013:018)

A V ACC-P
(349) wā kā:n [īt-māŋgər] C1.SUBJ pluck-DIST C6-mango.fruit
‘He picked mango fruits’ (PS_PS_Ror_2013: 004)
From the above examples we can establish (i) that S/A are treated the same and simultaneously different from P and (ii) that both S/A (NOM) and P (ACC) are overtly marked by morphology.

11.3.2 Functions of NOM and ACC word forms

The citation form of an Ut-Ma‘in noun is the same as the ACC word form, having the shape C-N, where C- reflects the noun class. This word shape is demonstrated in Table 38 for all noun classes (cf. Chapter III §3.1.3.1).

This prefixed word form is also used in a wide range of functions including: the object function (attested in the previous section), the nominal predicate of a copula clause (Chapter VI §6.2.1, when the predicate is an unmodified NP), the form used for the possessor in a possession ASSOC (Chapter IV §4.2 ), the form used following a preposition and preceeding post-positions (cf. (125) in Chapter IV ), the form used for focused participants in the clause initial focus position (Chapter V §5.2), and the form used when a noun is modified by a numeral (Chapter III §3.4.1). Except for modification by a numeral, use of the ACC word form in these functions is also dependent on the noun being unmodified.

57 This is an idiom that means something like “a guilty person always feels guilty when his area of guilt has been mentioned.”
Table 38: Citation forms of ʕt-Ma‘in nouns by noun class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN CLASS</th>
<th>NOUN PREFIX</th>
<th>CITATION FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ū-</td>
<td>ū-mákt ‘barren woman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1∅</td>
<td>∅-</td>
<td>∅-hámót ‘visitor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>∅-</td>
<td>∅-ná ‘oxen, bovines’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ū-</td>
<td>ū-bù ‘house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3∅</td>
<td>∅-</td>
<td>∅-bò ‘dream’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>šs-</td>
<td>šs-bò ‘dreams’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ūr-</td>
<td>ūr-kók ‘calabash’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ūt-</td>
<td>ūt-kók ‘calabashes’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>šm-</td>
<td>šm-nág ‘oil’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ū-</td>
<td>ū-ná ‘ox, bovine’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUG</td>
<td>ā-</td>
<td>ā-k gö ‘huge calabashes’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>ī-</td>
<td>ī-k gö ‘tiny calabash’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In contrast, the suffixed NOM word form is only ever used for an unmodified noun in S/A argument function. Figure 34 displays the many and varied functions of the ACC form in contrast to the single function of the NOM form.

Figure 34: Functions covered by NOM and ACC word forms in ʕt-Ma‘in Ma‘in (unmodified Ns, except for condition h)
The NOM form is not merely a noun with suffixed noun class marking. The NOM word form is a suffixed noun class marker with a specific vowel and a specific tone. The next four examples all have an NP with a noun head ‘woman’; the citation form of ‘woman’ is ū-nētā ‘C7-woman’. Compare the noun class NOM suffix -jə̀ in (351), with (i) the noun class 7 -ù suffix in (352) and (353) which occurs on a head noun when it is modified by an adjective (352) or definite marker (353), (ii) the noun class 6 definite marker =jā in (355b, c), which I analyze as a clitic but which nevertheless can occur adjacent to the noun root. I do not consider these other suffixed noun class forms to function as NOM case because they have tone and vowels that are distinct from the NOM suffix as demonstrated in §3.1.3.3 and these other suffixed forms can occur in any argument function. This is demonstrated in (353c) where the the definite phrase ‘that woman’ is identical in structure to the phrase used in (353a), but functions as a possessor. These examples have noun suffixes because of the specific morphosyntax pattern required for the modifiers contained within them.

A-NOM

(351) nētā-jə̀ nāŋ ūjā rém =₃zē₃
woman-C7 do.PST that word=saying…
‘Woman did that because…’ (MT_draft_2019: 9.21)

[N-C A-AG]

(352) [nētā-ù rēk-jä] wā ɗ u-ᵲē
woman-C7 small-AG.C7 1.FOC COP c3-eat
‘the small woman, she is eating’ (LW07 2006)
(353) a. [nētā-ù=jā]  wā-t-kósè = wā
    woman-c7 = DEF.C7  c1-c6-show = DEF.C1
    ‘That woman is the teacher.’

N = DEF.C

b. nētā = jā  wā-t-kósè = wā
    woman = DEF.C7  c1-c6-show = DEF.C1
    ‘That woman is the teacher.’

N = DEF.C

c. dā  fārək  nōmē  r-ʃľšt  ě  tʃāmpá [nētā-ù=jā]
    then  king  do.foc  c5-sitting  with  husband  woman-c7 = DEF.C7
    ‘The the king judged that woman’s husband.’ (GK_IY_Ror_2013: 032)

Having surveyed the various functions of the NOM and ACC word forms, we now turn to the morphosyntactic environment that neutralizes the case distinction of the word forms.

11.3.3 Neutralization between Marked Nominative and Accusative

In Ūt-Ma’in, any case distinctions signalled by prefixal versus suffixal noun class marking are neutralized when modifiers occur in the NP. I illustrate with the structures of the bracketed NPs in (354) through (356). Though the bracketed phrases are identical, they serve distinct grammatical functions. Here, then, word order alone identifies the syntactic role of each argument.

(354) a. wā  hèʔè
    C1.SUBJ  fell
b. bā = wā  hèʔè
    after = C1.FOC  fell
S  V
c. [jā = t-ə = s-tē = tī]
    āzgāssè
    fruit = AG6-ASSOC = C4-tree = AG6.DEF  roll.out
    ‘He fell. After he fell, those fruits rolled out.’ (SJ_PS_Ror_2013: 028)
11.4 Noun class as a required element of the NP

In Ût-Ma'in, noun class marking is a required element of the NP, not of the noun word. First, some marking of class is via clitics that attach to the root elements of the phrase based on syllable structure. For instance the head noun of the bracketed NPs in (354) through (356) is a class 6 noun, with the citation form ɘ̄t-jà ‘C6-fruit’.58 Noun class 6 is identified within the NP by an overt morphological marker that cliticizes to the noun stem, but the marker need not be attached to the noun stem.

Second, other examples demonstrate that sometimes class marking is registered only on agreeing targets of a head noun, not on the head noun itself (Chapter III §3.1.3.4). For example, (357) is an excerpt from an Ût-Ma'Jiir text where the shrike bird is sent to call all the birds for a “gathering of dancing”.59 The invitation is repeated three times in succession as the shrike calls out. The first time (a), the P argument has

58 See also numerous examples of the associative construction in Chapter IV and Appendix I where additional evidence demonstrates that the indicators of noun class in many NPs is indeed not pronounced with the noun root it is the classifier for.

59 Example (356) does not contain a prototypically transitive verb as the object conveys the purpose of ‘coming’ rather than an affected P, but the clause structure is otherwise identical to a transitive clause.
the noun class 5 ACC prefix ūr-, and class is marked on the modifying ASSOCP by the agreement marker d-. The second and third time in (b) and (c), there is no prefix on the head noun; the only indication of its noun class is on the modifying ASSOCP.

(357) a. kōwān-ð há-n-ē ūr-bān d-ð = s-hēw
   everyone-c2.SUBJ go-DIST-FOC C5-gathering C5-ASSOC = C4-dancing
   ‘“Everybody come for the gathering of dancing”’

   b. kōwān-ð há-n-ē bān d-ð = s-hēw
   everyone-c2.SUBJ go-DIST-FOC gathering C5-ASSOC = C4-dancing
   ‘“Everyone come for the gathering of dancing.”’

   c. kōwān-ð há-n-ē bān d-ð = s-hēw
   everyone-c2.SUBJ go-DIST-FOC gathering C5-ASSOC = C4-dancing
   ‘“Everyone come for the gathering of dancing.”’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 012-014)

Having now demonstrated that NPs in Ut-Ma'in are the element marked for the noun class of the head rather than the noun word, we now turn to the possible source of marked nominative case marking in a relative clause structure.

11.5 Relative clause as source of NOM marking

I suggest that the source of the suffixal noun class marking on an unmodified noun subject is a relative clause which relativizes on its subject. This hypothesis arises because there is no structural difference in form between a [N_{HEAD} – relative clause] construction on the one hand, and, on the other hand, a main clause [Subject – Verb] construction where the subject is an unmodified N. The unique suffix-marked NOM case pattern may thus be the result of reanalyzing an NP with a relative clause as a main
clause. Under this hypothesis, the relative pronoun remained as the only indicator of the noun class of the head noun, and phonologically shifted first to a clitic, and then to become a fully attached as a suffix on the head N.

In contrast, the prefixal ACC form is just the retained historical form of a citation noun word, matching the “expected” Niger-Congo prefixed noun class pattern. This also explains why the prefixed form is used in a much wider range of functions (cf. §11.3.2).

To elaborate the details of how a marked nominative case-marking system arose, § 11.5.1 discusses the structure of relative clauses, §11.5.2 discusses the reanalysis of an NP structure as a main clause, and §11.5.3 discusses how these marked-nominative case clauses are used in a discourse context.

11.5.1 Relative clauses in Ūt-Ma'in

In order to make the comparison between the NOM word form and relative clause (RELCL) structure, I first describe the synchronic grammar of the Ūt-Ma'in relative clause. Within the NP, a Ūt-Ma'in relative clause follows its head noun. The relative pronoun is a noun class form that agrees with the modified head noun. The relative pronoun occurs between the head noun and the modifying clause. Within the RELCL, the order of major constituents follows main clause order, typically S/A V (P), with the exception that the relativized constituent is elided.

Table 39 displays the full paradigm of relative pronoun forms for all noun classes; this is elaborated on from Smith (2007:88). In Table 39, an example of the relative pronoun in use is presented next to each relative pronoun form. The NP that contains
the RELCL is in the P argument position of the matrix clause. Each example is of the pattern in (358), where the P of the matrix clause corresponds to the subject of the relative clause.

(358) ‘I saw (a/some) HEADNOUN RELPN fell.’

In each example in Table 39, the acc noun class prefix on the P argument of the matrix clause is marked as optional with parentheses. This is based on the variation we saw in the previous section (cf. §11.4).

The next set of examples displays the various RelCl internal constituents that can be relativized on. All of S/A and P arguments can be relativized on, as well as NP obliques. In the next set of examples, the relative pronoun is underlined. The RELCL is bracketed. The constituents of the RELCL are labeled with a subscript RC. A bracketed null symbol [Ø] marks the location of the elided position of the constituent relativized on.

**RELATIVIZED S ARGUMENT**

```
[REL  S_{RC}  V_{RC} ]
```

(359) nět  [t-Ø  [Ø] há:n-ê  r-tàkòn]  tʃɔŋ  ñzɔʒ…

person C6-REL Ø  go-DIST-FOC  c5-beginning  think.PST  saying

‘People who came first thought that…’ (MT_draft_2019: 20.10)

**RELATIVIZED A ARGUMENT**

```
NP_{HEAD}  REL  [A_{RC}  V_{RC}  P_{RC}] 
```

(360) wà-kòn  nět  wá  w-Ø  [[Ø] gáŋŋí  nětájù?ìbò]

C1-certain person C1.D  C1.-REL Ø  married  woman.AG7.ASSOC.C1.Igbo

‘… a certain person who married an Igbo woman’
Table 39: Relative pronoun forms and relative clause examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>RELATIVE PRONOUN FORM</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>wò</td>
<td>5m hján (ū)-mákt wò̀ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C1-barren.woman C1.REL fall.PST 'I saw a barren woman who fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1B</td>
<td>wò</td>
<td>5m hján (ʔ)-fārsk wò̀ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C1B-king C1.REL fall.PST 'I saw a king who fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>ḍ</td>
<td>5m hján (ʔ)-rwāg ḍ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C2-elephant C2.REL fall.PST 'I saw elephants that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td>ḍ</td>
<td>5m hján (ū)-jǭ ḍ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C3-rain C3.REL fall.PST 'I saw rain that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3B</td>
<td>ḍ</td>
<td>5m hján (ʔ)-swās ḍ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C3B-entrance.hut C3.REL fall.PST 'I saw an entrance hut that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4</td>
<td>sò</td>
<td>5m hján (š)-rjāp sò̀ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C4-whip C4.REL fall.PST 'I saw whips that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5</td>
<td>dò</td>
<td>5m hján (shr)-jār dò̀ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C5-water.pot C5.REL fall.PST 'I saw a water pot that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6</td>
<td>tò</td>
<td>5m hján (.tbl)-tōm tò̀ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C6-hail C6.REL fall.PST 'I saw hail that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6B</td>
<td>mò</td>
<td>5m hján (5m)-ōg m-ò hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C6B-juice C6B.REL fall.PST 'I saw some juice that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C7</td>
<td>jǭ</td>
<td>5m hján (ū)-fē jǭ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C7-branch C7.REL fall.PST 'I saw a branch that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C7B</td>
<td>jǭ</td>
<td>5m hján (ʔ)-lāmpā jǭ hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST C7B-man C7.REL fall.PST 'I saw a man who fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUG</td>
<td>à</td>
<td>5m hján (ā)-tāʔār à hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST CAUG-rock CAUG.REL fall.PST 'I saw huge rocks that fell.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDIM</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>5m hján (i)-tāʔār i hē:g 1SG.SUBJ see.PST CDIM-rock CDIM.REL fall.PST 'I saw a tiny stone that fell.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.5.2 Reanalysis of an NP with a relative clause as a main clause

Now that we have seen the grammar of the relative clause, let us imagine how the NP containing a relative clause structure could come to be reinterpreted as a main clause. I propose that main clauses with unmodified NP subjects have been reanalyzed from clefted focus NPs containing a relative clause with a relativized subject. This is schematized in Figure 35. In Figure 36, I represent the relative pronoun as the source of the NOM subject marker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clefted NP containing a RELCL</th>
<th>focused NP containing a RELCL</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REL pronoun &gt; noun class indicator for reanalyzed main clause &gt; NOM subject marker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 35: Pathway from NP with relative clause to main clause

Figure 36: Pathway from relative pronoun to Nominative (NOM) subject marker
First, synchronically NPs can be fronted to the initial focus position of a clause. NPs modified by relative clauses can also occur in this fronted position. For example, in (363), an NP that contains a RELCL ‘person who insults his father’ is placed before (or occurs outside the core of) the entire matrix clause ‘he will be killed’. This fronted NP refers to the same entity as the P argument of the impersonal construction that is the matrix clause.

(363)  

(a) nê♯t wà djá♯pê ẽsô-ũ wá...  
    person C1.REL insult father-C1 = C1.POSS  
    ‘Person who insults his father...’

(b) nã dè hò=d-d=wá  
    NSPEC FUT.AUX kill = C5-ASSOC = C1.OBJ  
    ‘he will be killed.’ (lit: they will kill him) (MT_draft_2019: 15.04)

(364) nê♯t-d̘ djá♯pê ẽsô-ũ wá...  
    person-C1.SUBJ insult father-C1 = C1.POSS  
    ‘That person insults his father.’

(365) nê♯t=d̘ wá djá♯pê ẽsô-ũ wá...  
    person = C1.DEF insult father-C1 = C1.POSS  
    ‘That person insults his father.’

All that is required for (363) to be read as two matrix clauses instead of as a fronted NP with a RELCL followed by a matrix clause is to reanalyze the class-marked relative pronoun as the “marker of noun class”. If its purpose is now to identify the class of the noun, it can then begin to be interpreted as “just a class marker” and then “necessary as a class marker” since the clause otherwise has no indication of the noun class of the head noun. The result of this reinterpretation is an unmodified noun preceding a fully inflected verb (which is the inflected verb of the erstwhile relative clause). There is no change in structure but the reanalysis yields a suffixed noun in the canonical Êt-Ma’in S/A position. The pathway from relative clause marker to main
clause marker is not unlike the proposed shift of the Trumai [tpy, Cariban] relativizer that developed into a focus particle, which then further developed into additional functions in main clause syntax (Guirardello 1999: Chapter 5). The point is that relative clause syntax is attested in other languages as the source of main clause syntax.

11.5.3 Discourse function of unmodified noun subjects

Now that we have seen how NPs containing a relative clause could have come to be reinterpreted as main clause syntax, the current section turns to look at how unmodified NP subject clauses are used in broader discourse. In narrative discourse, clauses with unmodified NP subjects are rarely used and always have definite reference to an established and prominent participant. In addition, clauses with unmodified NP subjects occur where who or what is the main participant shifts in the narrative context; this is not unlike a constrastive focus function of relative clauses in English, e.g., *It’s John who I saw* (Evans 2007: 413). In Ut-Ma'in, the function of an erstwhile relative clause (turned finite main clause) with what is now an unmodified NP subject is to communicate that ‘it is this participant who…’, in contrast to the participant or participants prominent in the preceding part of the discourse. In this section I present evidence to support this claim about the discourse function of clauses with unmodified NP subjects.

Outside of any broader discourse context, individual clauses with unmodified subjects have indefinite reference, as in the elicited examples in (366) and (367). However, within longer stretches of narrative discourse, unmodified noun subjects rarely occur, and when they do occur they can not be understood as indefinite.
The next set of examples are taken entirely from a single folk narrative about “How guinea fowl birds lost their head feathers.” The first mention of a guinea fowl within the tale is underlined in (368). ‘guinea fowl’ first occurs in a prefix-marked accusative form, ū-kāt ‘c7-guinea.fowl’. It is the P argument of the verb ‘put’ but with the sense of ‘cause’ or ‘make’ in the opening lines of the story, lines 001-002. Despite the English free translation with ‘the guinea fowl’ in line b, the reference here is to the generic category of “type.”

(368) a. mē ṭ funcionários t-ð = [m já bā  1SG.FUT love C6-ASSOC = 1SG.SUBJ give 2SG ‘I will love to give you’

b. wāʔbas = d-ð nām = ð wāʔ = ū-kāt  story = C5-ASSOC thing = ASSOC put-PFT-FOC = c7-guinea.fowl ‘the story of what makes the guinea fowl’

c. ʔs-kān, ʔr-kjâte ʔr-kjāt  c4-cry c5-difficult c5-difficult ‘cry “difficulty, difficulty” ’60 (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 001-002)

In this text, twenty six clauses pass without further mention of a guinea fowl. Those intervening clauses give introductory information about a dance festival and the

60 The sounds of the word ʔr-kjāt also mimics the sound of a guinea fowl’s cry.
gathering of all kinds of birds. In this story there is one bird of every type that is a character representing all birds of his type. To help distinguish between references to the type guinea fowl and the character Guniea Fowl, I use the label “Mr. Guinea Fowl” when the character of the narrative is intended and the generic lower-case “guinea fowl” when the type is intended.

In line 028, the narrator talks directly to Mr. Guinea Fowl and references him as bɔ̄ u-kɔ́:t ‘you, Mr. Guinea Fowl’. This is underlined in (369). I include this example to show that Guinea Fowl is a main character in this story.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
  & R_{FOC} & A & V & R & T \\
\text{(369)} & bɔ̄ & u-kɔ́:t & rɔ́-ɔ & jáː-ːg & bɔ̄ & ?-tʃàn = dà \\
2SG & c7-guinea.fowl & god-c3.SUBJ & give-PST & 2SG & c6-feathers = NEG
\end{array}
\]

‘You, guinea fowl, creator did not give you feathers.’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 028)

Thirty-two clauses of the 101 clauses in the text refer to Mr. Guinea Fowl using pronouns. Without a doubt, Guinea Fowl is a main character in the story, and yet, there are three clauses that use the NOM marked unmodified NP form kɔ́ːt-jɔ̀

‘guinea.fowl-c7.SUBJ’, shown in (370), (371), and (372). These instances cannot be interpreted as indefinite references, like the elicited clauses we saw in (366) and (367). Each clause that contains an unmodified noun reference to Mr. Guinea Fowl also contains an event that moves the main story line forward. Each occurrence of an unmodified noun subject reference to Mr. Guinea Fowl occurs after a brief episode of other birds being the main actors.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
  & S_{NOM} & & & & & & \\
\text{(370)} & kɔ̀ná & kɔ́ːt-jɔ̀ & hó-tə & bɛlːɔ̀ & ɔ = nɔ̀-ʊ & ɔm-fɔ́g \\
\text{there} & \text{guinea.fowl-c7} & \text{go-PFT} & \text{place.c5.3SG.POSS} & \text{ASSOC = bird = c7} & \text{c6B-borrow}
\end{array}
\]

‘Then the guinea fowl has gone to his place of borrowing from the birds’ (GF_IT_Juur_2007: 032-033)
I propose that these main event line clauses contain unmodified subject NPs because the restated noun serves to switch the local discourse topic back to Mr. Guinea Fowl, after narrating the activity of other characters. There is no reason to use any modifiers to let the hearer know which guinea fowl the speaker has in mind; there is only one Mr. Guinea Fowl. This is crucial to an understanding of the function of these “unmodified” NOM NPs in Ut-Ma'in. Unmodified does not mean indefinite, even though the language has a definite modifier (Smith 2007: 75; Chapter III §3.1.3). The discourse context alone can provide identifiability.

11.6 Chapter summary

At least a part of the mystery of the moving affixes in Ut-Ma'in has been addressed in this chapter, namely, why do unmodified noun subjects have a noun class suffix but unmodified noun objects have a noun class prefix? And also, why does this distinction dissolve when the noun is modified?

In this chapter I have argued that the source of the suffixed noun class marking on the unmodified subject nouns lies in the structure of NPs containing relative clauses. A fronted NP containing a relative clause can, with little effort, be reanalyzed as a main
clause. Particularly when the relative clause expresses an event that is sequenced with the event conveyed by the main clause, the structure is semantically ripe for reanalysis. Structurally, there is no change in the order of the NP constituents: the head noun (i.e. the relativized subject) is reanalyzed as the (unmodified) subject of the main clause; the relative pronoun, already marked for agreement with the noun class of the head noun, is reanalyzed as a subject marker; and becomes a noun class affix attached to the right edge of the head noun; the relative clause itself is reinterpreted as the remainder of a main clause (i.e., as a main-clause verb phrase).

We saw that the discourse function of unmodified NP subjects in folk narratives is to re-establish a character as the local topic, after activity by other characters.

The outcome of now having a suffixed noun class marker just on subjects is that, when compared to the form of unmodified nouns in P argument position, the Marked Nominative pattern emerges. The “normal” prefixal class form is used for P arguments (i.e., it ends up being the ACC form) and also is used for a broader range of functions, simply by virtue of the fact that it is the “original” shape of the noun word.

König (2008:201) notes that little is known about the development of marked nominative systems, but does speculate on some possible sources such as passive, topic, and definiteness markers. She does not include relative clauses as a source for the marked nominative, but as shown in this chapter, the relative clause structure is likely the source of the NOM pattern in ʕt-Ma‘in.
CHAPTER XII
THEMES IN DISCOVERY

The initial goal of this study was to document the grammar of predication in Ut-Ma'in. We have seen that in order to understand many of the predication types (Chapters V through X), we must first understand the sometimes complex structures of the noun phrase in Ut-Ma'in, particularly with regard to the prolific noun class system (Chapter III). Out of this study additional questions arose, which this study has attempted to answer. In this brief chapter I highlight some of the major insights that have been gleaned from this study of Ut-Ma'in nominalization and predication. I present these as themes discovered and as areas for future research.

With so many predicates dependent on nominal structures, this is a language in flux, as all languages are, in regard to change over time. Let us consider the use of the Associative Construction (ASSOCXN) structure as a means of encoding the object of a nominalized verb (Chapters IV). Its structure parallels that of a noun modified by a second noun. So, when it contains a nominalized verb as the head, is it nominal or verbal? With the data available, the answer must be “sometimes.”

For the progressive constructions, specifically (Chapter VII), there is evidence that a shift has occurred from the nominalized verb having the status of a noun phrase complement of an auxiliary, to being a fully verbal phrase. Recall that the transitive (TRAN) progressive auxiliary constructions no longer strictly adhere to the noun class agreement required of NPs containing Associative phrases (ASSOCPs); instead, only noun class 4 and 5 agreement forms are attested in the TRAN progressive auxiliary construction. Also, recall that some erstwhile nominalized verbs in the transitive
progressive construction show a complete loss of agreement marking. This shift in agreement requirements is not true of all the auxiliary constructions. For example, the future obligation auxiliary construction still allows the noun class 6 agreement form.

Understanding the origins of the “extra” marking positioned between verbs and their objects in the auxiliary constructions helps us to understand the modern structures. However, there is a more subtle shift at work that affects how we should categorize these forms modernly. To be specific, we have needed to evaluate whether these structures are modernly best viewed as NPs, nominalized verb phrases, emerging finite verbal phrases, or fully-fledged finite verb phrases. My evaluation is “yes” to all of the above. In one context or construction, the form and meaning of the larger phrasal or clausal construction must inform our understanding of the categorization and labeling of each of the diverse ASSOCXNS.

When the entire phrase is used as a noun, the structure remains nominal. When the entire phrase serves as the predicate following a TAMP auxiliary, the structure may be considered verbal. The crucial point to remember is that the morphosyntax can guide us in our determination of categories. As the morphosyntax shifts, as described for the progressive, we see actualization of the change in function from nominal modification to verbal predication.

Similarly, and perhaps more fundamentally, there is some difficulty in identifying at what level a “lexeme” exists in ʿūl-Maʿin. For example, certain roots are only understood in any concrete way in the world once their noun class is apparent. In fact, in language use, a noun is never expressed without its noun class which guides the
The lexeme must be understood to be at least at the level of a word (Table 40), but I propose it must be understood at the level of the NP (as argued for in Chapter XI §11.4). To support this proposal, Table 40 presents various word forms/noun phrase forms of the root tār/tāʔār, the meaning of which is dependent on the listener knowing the noun class by which the root is categorized by the speaker. Certainly there is some abstract meaning shared among these forms, but in actual use, the expression of the abstract meaning requires a form larger in structure than just the root.

However, the manifestation of noun class within an NP in U̱t-Ma‘in serves an even wider range of functions than just the “disambiguation” of size/shape and number as given above. The particular marking used to identify the noun class of a root within an NP communicates various syntactic functions, including overtly marking definiteness, case, and even a nominal’s status as head of a noun phrase. These syntactic functions are demonstrated in Table 41 for the citation form ūm-ṭāʔar ‘pebbles’.

---

61 This is most strikingly clear for nouns with an overt noun class marker. This argument is harder to support for the “null-marked” noun classes, whose forms do exist in some situations with no overt marking; however, we must consider that the “null-marked” forms are definite-null-marked in the sense that the speaker/listener must have a mental representation of the noun class of the word in order to properly use the noun in an utterance. Often the noun class of a null-marked noun is available within the same NP or nearby context, in which case the main argument holds: a noun is never expressed without its noun class so as to guide the listener to the meaning of the “lexeme”.
Table 40: Manifestations of noun class on the root *tār in citation forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>TRANSLATION</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*tār/ *tāʔār</td>
<td>?rock like substance?</td>
<td>Cannot be interpreted without a noun class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūr-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘rock’</td>
<td>Citation form of ‘rock’; singular counterpart to ū-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūt-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘rocks’</td>
<td>Citation form of ‘rocks’; plural counterpart to ūr-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī-tār</td>
<td>‘pebble’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘pebble’; singular counterpart to īm-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDIM-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īm-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘gravel, pebbles’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘pebbles’; plural counterpart to ī-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6B-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āt-tār</td>
<td>‘boulder’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘boulder’; singular counterpart to ā-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ātār</td>
<td>‘boulders’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘boulders’; plural counterpart to ā-tāʔār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUG-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ās-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘long stones used as foundation of</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘foundation stones’; plural in form and meaning; no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4-rock</td>
<td>mud-built granaries’</td>
<td>singular counterpart specific to this shape and purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The construction within which a root is found determines the “word category.”

Some roots show a greater range of functions than displayed in Table 41, making the classification of the root into a particular “part of speech” nearly impossible. In particular, the root *mār can function in a wider range of functions than *tār/ tāʔār. The root *mār can serve as a verb as well as in all the structurally dependent NP types we saw in Table 41. The abstract meaning of *mār must include both the result of dying and the activity of dying. Its reference to a discourse-world result (nominal use) or a discourse-world event (verbal use) is entirely dependent on the phrase structure or construction with which it is used.
Many Ût-Ma'in roots have the flexibility of màr. Further exploration of the range of construction types available for roots in Ût-Ma'in is necessary to understand to what extent roots can be categorized into typologically-understood word classes. The larger phrasal or clausal constructions (involving both form and meaning) must inform our understanding of the categorization of all roots. We cannot know the “word class” of a particular root without that larger context.

Table 41: Manifestations of noun class for ‘pebbles’ relative to syntactic functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>TRANSLATION</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɘ̄m-tāʔār</td>
<td>‘pebbles’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘pebbles’; plural counterpart to t-tāʔār; ACC case form used for objects of verbs, objects of prepositions, 2nd NP of an ASSOCCXN, and a nominal predicate, among other functions (Chapters III, IV, V and XI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6B-rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāʔār-mò</td>
<td>‘pebbles’</td>
<td>NOM case form used for S/A argument in all predication types (Chapters IV); this form can not serve as a nominal predicate. The form is identical to the 1st NP of an ASSOCCXN and to the head of an NP containg a relative clause (Chapter XI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rock-C6B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāʔār-ɘ̄m mó</td>
<td>‘the pebbles’</td>
<td>Can be used for definite referents in all argument roles including subject and in any location an NP can occur, such as the object of a preposition; it can also serve as a nominal predicate, among other functions (Chapters IV and V).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rock-C6B AG6B.DEF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*tār/ *tāʔār</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Can not be used alone in this form as a noun with any recoverable discourse world referent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*tār/ *tāʔār</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Can not be used as a verb root; cannot occur with verb suffixes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 42: Manifestations of noun class for ‘death/dying’ relative to syntactic functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>TRANSLATION</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɘ̀m¬màr</td>
<td>‘death’/ ‘dying’</td>
<td>Citation form for ‘death’ ACC case form used for objects of verbs, objects of prepositions, 2nd NP of an ASSOCXN, and as a nominal predicate, among other functions (Chapters III, IV, V and XI). Also can occur with the full range of TAMP auxiliaries as the semantically main verb for INTR constructions (Chapter VII-X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6B-die</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màr-mò</td>
<td>‘death’</td>
<td>NOM case form used for S/A argument in all predication types (Chapters IV and XI); this form can not serve as a nominal predicate. The form is identical to the 1st NP of an ASSOCXN and to the head of an NP containing a relative clause (Chapter XI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màr-ɘ̀m mò</td>
<td>‘the death’</td>
<td>Can be used for definite referents in all argument roles including subject and in any position an NP can occur, such as the object of a preposition; it can also serve as a nominal predicate, among other functions (Chapters IV and V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*màr</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Can not be used alone in this form as a noun with any recoverable discourse world referent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màr</td>
<td>‘die’</td>
<td>Can be used as a bare verb form with present or past interpretation depending on the discourse context (Chapter V and Paterson 2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màr-ɘ́g</td>
<td>‘died’</td>
<td>Can occur with past verb suffix (Chapter V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màr-ɘ̀stè</td>
<td>‘has died’</td>
<td>Can occur with perfect verb suffix (Chapter V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɘ́t¬màr</td>
<td>‘will die’</td>
<td>Can occur with the ɘ́-Future (Chapter VII)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In sum, we cannot understand predication within Ḫt-Ma'in without understanding nominalization and noun phrase syntax, and we cannot understand the word class categorization and meaning of any noun-class-marked element without an understanding of the larger syntactic construction and the discourse context within which it is found.
APPENDIX A

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1st person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2nd person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3rd person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>agent-like argument of a transitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AG</td>
<td>agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC</td>
<td>associative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC C</td>
<td>associative complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSOC P</td>
<td>associative phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTR</td>
<td>attributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUG</td>
<td>augmentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>noun class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>consonant (Chapter II)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUS</td>
<td>causative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COND</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONJ</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COP</td>
<td>copula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXN</td>
<td>construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>determiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>definite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEM</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP</td>
<td>dependant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIST</td>
<td>distal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCL</td>
<td>exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQUIV</td>
<td>equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXT</td>
<td>existential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.k.a.</td>
<td>formerly known as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOC</td>
<td>focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>glide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDEO</td>
<td>ideophone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCL</td>
<td>inclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEF</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTR</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITR</td>
<td>iterative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k.o.</td>
<td>‘kind of’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD</td>
<td>modifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>nasal consonant (Chapter II)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMLZ</td>
<td>nominalized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>noun phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPER</td>
<td>non-personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSPEC</td>
<td>non-specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUM</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NV</td>
<td>nonverbal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Onset (Chapter II)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJ</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>proper name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSS</td>
<td>possessive pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTN</td>
<td>post-noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSTP</td>
<td>postpositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREP</td>
<td>prepositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRED</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRF</td>
<td>perfect tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSSD</td>
<td>possessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSSR</td>
<td>possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>past tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUANT</td>
<td>quantifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

245
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>recipient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REL</td>
<td>relative pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELCL</td>
<td>relative clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>single-argument of an intransitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBJ</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth.</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>theme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAMP</td>
<td>tense, aspect, mode, polarity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNS</td>
<td>tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAN</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP</td>
<td>verb phrase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX B

LANGUAGE DATA, LANGUAGE VARIETIES AND LANGUAGE CONSULTANTS

Data used for this study were collected between 2006 and 2019. Approximately seven and a half hours of recorded and translated data were available for this study. The primary recordings of language data and Út-Ma'in texts used for this study are listed in this appendix. I use the term text to refer to both written and recorded data listed below; all recorded data has a recording length listed in the final column. Sample texts that have been transcribed, glossed, and translated are included in additional appendices.

Column 1 gives a category or genre for the text. Genres include:

i. folk narratives
ii. personal narratives about personal experiences
iii. songs
iv. word games
v. retellings of observed events - particularly retelling of events after watching the silent film developed by Chafe (Chafe 1980), known as the Pear Film.
vi. read texts
vii. crafted texts - these include translated materials and adult literacy educational materials
viii. dialogues - often interview style with all participants speaking in Út-Ma'in. These were facilitated by my consultant, Ibrahim Tume Ushe. Many were recorded on his own initiative.

Column 2 is the abbreviation used when referring to an example from a particular text. These abbreviations are used throughout the study. Column three is a full title of the text. Column 4 is the abbreviation used for the main speaker. Column 5 is the
Ut-Ma'in language variety of used by the main speaker. Column 6 is the length of the recording in hours, minutes, and seconds (HH:MM:SS).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Speaker</th>
<th>Variety</th>
<th>HH:MM:SS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>GK_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>King of Gossip</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:02:48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>KM_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Kambari Man</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>MA_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Musa and Audu</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>PW_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Possessed Woman</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:03:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Personal Narrative</td>
<td>Minna_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>My Trip to Minna</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proverbial</td>
<td>SR_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Sow and Reap</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>YM_IY_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Young Man who wants to Marry</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>SJ_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:04:24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>VY_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>VY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:05:47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>PS_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>Psa</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:04:54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>IJ_PS_Kuur_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>IJ</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:06:46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>MG_PS_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>MG</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:04:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>IY_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>IY</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:04:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>MP_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:01:52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>IT_PS_Jiir_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:05:27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>SS_PS_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Pear Story Retelling</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:03:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>KB_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>King Bùnni Karikaka</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:03:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>KO_MI_Fer_2013</td>
<td>King of the Okra</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:01:54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>EH_VA_Fer_2013</td>
<td>Evil Husband</td>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:00:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Speaker</td>
<td>Variety</td>
<td>HH:MM:SS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>TB_VA_Fer_2013</td>
<td>Two Birds</td>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:01:30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td>LK_MM_Fer_2013</td>
<td>Luke 6: 27-31 Reading</td>
<td>MM</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:01:21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortatory</td>
<td>MB_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Personal Message to Becky</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:03:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>GF_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Spider, Frog and Chameleon</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur/Ror</td>
<td>0:03:45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>Ror_Wordlist</td>
<td>SILCAWL 1700</td>
<td>SJ/SS/IT/PS/IT</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:20:31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>VB_Ror_2013</td>
<td>Verb Discussion</td>
<td>SJ/MG/M</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:37:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW01_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 01</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:02:12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW02_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 02</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:01:45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW03_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 03</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:02:10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW04_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 04</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:03:27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW05 2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 05</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW06 2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 06</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:02:45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW07_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 07</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:03:58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW08_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 08</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:02:25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW09_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 09</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:03:42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LW10_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop 10</td>
<td>SJ/SS</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:34:42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elicitation</td>
<td>LWdis_Ror_2006</td>
<td>Ling Workshop Discussion</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:00:52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>RH_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Rwana and her husband</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:04:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>TS_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Why the tortoise has a hard shell</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:02:09</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>BT_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Why the bat can not look up</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:01:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortatory</td>
<td>WC_IT_Jiir_2007</td>
<td>Warning to children</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Juur</td>
<td>0:04:58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

249
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Speaker</td>
<td>Variety</td>
<td>HH:MM:SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>Primer 2009</td>
<td>How to read Ut Ma'in</td>
<td>SJ/IT/PS/JI</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:11:02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>Primer 2009</td>
<td>How to read Ut-Ma'in: Final Story</td>
<td>SJ/IT/PS/JI</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:08:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>GL 2008</td>
<td>Gospel of Luke Translation</td>
<td>SJ/IT/PS/JI</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>MM_Ror_2017</td>
<td>Matseri Market</td>
<td>MM</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>0:16:04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HK00_2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 00</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:04:58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HK01 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 01</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:01:11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HK02 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 02</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:00:59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HK03 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 03</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:01:25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HK04 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 04</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>0:01:08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wordlist</td>
<td>HK05 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 05 wordlist</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>00:11:22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wordlist</td>
<td>HK06 2017</td>
<td>Headmaster at New Kele 06 wordlist</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Kuur</td>
<td>00:09:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>KE 2017</td>
<td>Kuka Elder - Mungu</td>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Zuksun</td>
<td>0:10:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>KM18 2017</td>
<td>Kuka Man 18 Mungu</td>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Zuksun</td>
<td>0:11:35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>KM19 2017</td>
<td>Kuka Man 19 Mungu</td>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Zuksun</td>
<td>0:12:26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>KM20 2017</td>
<td>Kuka Man 20 Mungu</td>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Zuksun</td>
<td>0:06:06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song</td>
<td>LM_Fer_2017</td>
<td>Lema Mazi's songs</td>
<td>LM</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:09:47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game</td>
<td>WG_Fer_2017</td>
<td>Word Game at Kukum tree</td>
<td>WG</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:07:53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>KT_Fer_2017</td>
<td>Boy's story at Kukum tree</td>
<td>KS</td>
<td>Fer</td>
<td>0:07:04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>UW_Us_2017</td>
<td>Us Women</td>
<td>UW</td>
<td>Us</td>
<td>0:31:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>PTY_draft_2019</td>
<td>Work of those sent by Jesus</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>MT_draft_2019</td>
<td>Matiyyu's Gospel</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

250
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Genre</td>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Speaker</td>
<td>Variety</td>
<td>HH:MM:SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>RM_draft_2019</td>
<td>Letter to Roma from Burus</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>UK_Jiir_2017</td>
<td>At home of Usman Keta and Tani Ai</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td>Jiir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td>HF_Juur_2017</td>
<td>At home of Hassan Faruk</td>
<td>HF</td>
<td>Jiir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crafted</td>
<td>JF_Ror_2009</td>
<td>Fakai Jesus Film</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>Ror</td>
<td>2:08:00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX C

SAMPLE TEXT A- MUSA AND AUDU (MA_IY_ROR_2013)

Introduction to text: Musa and Audu

This short narrative tells of two friends, Musa and Audu. This story is told as a joke with the two names being non-referential, generic and common Hausa names used by many language communities in the area. Audu, who wants to take a trip, needs some financial assistance; Audu asks for Musa to give him a “ring of wealth”. When Audu approaches Musa, Audu’s specific reason for asking Musa for help is that “[Audu] always remembers [Musa]” when he travels. Musa replies that he will not give him the “ring of wealth” precisely for that reason. Audu “always” and seemingly only remembers Musa when he needs money. The final lines of Musa’s response are a play on words. Musa repeats Audu’s words as Musa’s reason for rejecting the request, implying that perhaps Audu should not only consider Musa when he needs assistance.

Orthographic transcription: Musa and Audu

Musa ṇ Audu, ë o ỵ-ḥ. De̱en ḥ-ḍ Audu ð̣ṣ wa ṇm m-ha. Wa ḍè' ỵdu Musa. Musa ọṭe kwaat-yu ỵt-kẉṃ. Wa ð̣ṣ wa ṇṃ ẉą ỵs-verbose; wa ọnk kwaat-u ỵ ḍu Musa. Wa zu, “Um ð̣ṣ zu ḅ̣ṃ ṃ-ṣeg ṃ kwaat-u inya. Um ṇm m-ha remu zu um hụ̈t ỵt-bakus ỵ ḅ̣ ṇ.” Musa zu “Kwaat-u inya, um da séỵ ḅ̣ da, ỵ remu zu a ḅè, ḅ̣ hụ̈t ỵt-bakus ỵ ṃ ṇ.”

Translation: Musa and Audu

Musa and Audu, they are friends. On a certain day, Audu wanted to go on a journey. He went to Musa because Musa had a valuable ring. He wanted to trick him to
collect that ring from Musa. He said, “I want to say, you loan me that ring when I travel because I always remember you.” Musa said, “That ring, I will not loan to you because when you go you always remember me.”

**Interlinearized text: Musa and Audu**

The text is presented in units of six lines with an optional seventh line. Line one contains the Ut-Ma‘in orthography that corresponds to the text as presented in §2.8; this line is in **bolded** font. Line two contains numbered phonological groupings that roughly equate to clauses or phrases, e.g., 001 and 002. The numbers in line two were established by running a the Silence Recognizer MPI-PL within the ELAN transcription program to establish gaps between phonological units. Line three contains [bracketed] construction labels and the chapter in which the contraction is described in this study is contained in parentheses where applicable; these labels are in small caps, e.g., [IDENTIFICATION PREDICATE NOMINAL (Ch 5)]. Line four contains a phonemic transcription using IPA symbols as used in the examples throughout the study. The data presented in line four is *italicized*; [brackets] are used to match the boundaries of the construction labels from line three. Line five contains glosses for the phonemic transcriptions. Line six contains a free translation that corresponds to the text as presented in the translation section above. An optional seventh line contains a literal translation when useful as a bridge between the glosses in line five and the free translation in line six.
Musa nè Audu, è ọ ụr-hụb.
001 002
[IDENTIFICATION PREDICATE NOMINAL (Ch 5)]
[mùsá = nè Aúdù ẹ = ọ = l-hèb]
PN with PN C2 = COP = C5-friend
‘Musa and Audu, they are friends.’

Değen họ-de Audu ọssa wa nôm m-ha.
003 004
[‘WANT’ MATRIX (Ch 7) [INTRANS ‘DO’ (Ch 9) ]]
dè-kọn họ = dè [âúdù ọ = s-sâ wà = nóm = m-ha]
c5-there day = C5 PN PROG = C4-want C1.SBJ = do = C6B-journey
‘On a certain day, Audu wanted to go on a journey.’
(lit: ‘Audu is wanting he do journey’)

Wa de’e údu Musa; Musa ọtè kwaat-yù út-kwùm.
005 006
[BASIC INTRANSITIVE (Ch 4) ] [POSSESSIVE PREDICATE (Ch 5) ]
[wà = de’ẹ = dè mùsá], [mùsá ẹt-ẹt ẹ kwàt = j-th t kwàm]
c1.SBJ = go = to PN PN COP-PFT ring = C7-ASSOC = C6 wealth
‘He went to Musa (because) Musa has a valuable ring.’ (lit: ring of wealth)

Wa ọssa wa nômù wa ụs-ver; wa ọnkJ kwaat-u ya
007
[‘WANT’ (Ch 7) [ NOMINALIZED ‘DO’ (Ch 9) ]
[wa = ọ = s-sà nóm wà = s-ver ọk kwàt-ù = jà]
c1 = PROG = C4-want do C1.OBJ = C4-wisdom C1 = collect ring-C7 = C7.DEF
‘He wanted to deceive him (lit: is wanting do him clever) to collect that ring...’

ụdu Musa.Wa ụzù, “Ụm ọssa ụzù
008 009
... [‘SAY’ MATRIX [‘WANT’ MATRIX (Ch 7) ]
ṣdị mùsà] [wà = zà = [m ọ = s-sà zà]
from PN C1.SBJ = say = 1SG.SBJ PROG = C4-want say
‘...from Musa. ‘He said, “ I want to say,...’
bọ nom mẹ m-seg my kwat-u inya.

010
[DITRANSITIVE ‘DO’ (Ch 9) ]
[\[ bɔ = nm = mɛ \quad 5m-seg = m-d \quad kwat-ù ññ-jà \] ]
2SG = do = 1SG.OBJ \quad C6B-loan = C6B-ASSOC \quad ring-C7 DEM-C7
‘ "... you loan me that ring...’
(lit: ‘you do me loan of that ring’)

Um nom m-ha, remu zụ um hynt yt-baksy y bo nẹ.”

011
[INTRANSITIVE ‘DO’ (Ch 9) \quad [ADV.PURP [GO.AUX CLAUSE (Ch 8) ] ] ]
[\[ 5m = nm = m-há:\quad [ rêm = z = \quad [ m \quad hş-t = ɛt \quad baks = ş = bş = nɛ ] ] \] ]
1SG.SUBJ = do = C6B-going-DEP \quad word = say = 1SG.SUBJ \quad GO.AUX-PFT = C6 Remembering = LOC = 2SG = with
‘ "... (when) I travel because I always go remembering you.” ’
(lit: ‘because I have gone remembering with you.’)

Musa zụ “Kwat-u inya, um da segu bo da,

012 \quad 013
['SAY’ MATRIX [[NEGATIVE DITRANSITIVE FUT.AUX WITH FRONTED T ARGUMENT (Ch 6)]
[\[ mūsā zē \quad [ kwat-u \quad īn-yā \quad 5m = dā \quad sèg = bād ] \] ]
PN say \quad ring-C7 \quad DEM-C7 \quad 1SG.SUBJ = NEG \quad borrow \quad 2SG = NEG
‘Musa said, “That ring, I will not loan to you...’

ụ remu zụ a bo de’g, bo hynt yt-baksy y me nẹ.”

014 \quad 015
[ADV.PURP [ADV.TIME \quad [GO.AUX (Ch 8) ] ] ] ]
[\[ rēm = z = \quad [ ā \quad bė = dē?é \quad [ bş = hş-t \quad ɛt-baks \quad 5 = mɛ = nɛ ] ] ] ]
word = say = when \quad 2SG = go \quad 2SG = GO.AUX-PFT \quad C6-remember LOC = 1SG.OBJ = with
‘... “because when you go you always go remembering me.” ’
(lit: you have gone remembering with me)

255
Introduction to text: Kambari Man

This short narrative tells of a man from the neighboring Kambari language community visiting the family of his wife. It is not clear whether the wife and wife’s family are Ut-Ma’in speakers. It may be that this is told of a Kambari man visiting Kambari relatives. The man is served fried sweet potatoes that are too hot to eat. As a result he burns his tongue and begins to cry. However, to hide his error in eating food that was too hot, he gives an alternate reason for his tears, namely that he was thinking of the death of Jesus on the cross. His religious cover story is also the punch line of this humorous story.

Orthographic transcription: Kambari Man

Wakun wa kambari wa de'ed a manu wa ne. Wa bit, na taaste sak-du yu-kutunku m-dung ne. Na ye' wa to, wa o m-en-tu yu-re. Ra-yu doors wa u-nu. Wa suck m-is, rap rap rap. Na zu yan-o wa otte us-kan. Wa zu wa baksun m-bakus uz marum Yeso ne y dom u-kan; o wa wa us-kan.

Translation: Kambari Man

A certain Kambari man travelled to his in-laws. When he met (them), the sweet potatoes had finished cooking with heat. He was given them (the sweet potatoes). When he is in the middle of eating, fire burned his mouth. He began to shed tears. Someone said, “Why are you crying?”. He said he was remembering the death of Jesus on the cross; that made him cry.
Interlinearized text: *Kambari Man*

The text is presented in units of six lines with an optional seventh line as described for Sample text A in §2.

**Wakun wa kambari wa ṭeŋuy a manuy wa nê.**

001

[INTRANS PREDICATION (Ch 4)]

[wâ-kêñ wâ-kâmbâri = wâ ṭeŋuy ñdêñ a = mân-ñ = wâ = nê]

c1-there c1-kambari.person = c1 travel to c2 = in.laws c2 = c1.POSS = with

‘A certain Kambari person traveled to his in-laws.’ (lit: to those with his inlaws)

**Wâ bit na taas sak-ðu ṭut-kutunku m-dyng ne.**

002

[TRANS PRED(Ch 4)]

[IMPERSONAL TELIC AUX (Ch 4 & Ch 7)]

[wâ-bît [nâ tâs sâk ñdêñ ñt-ô-[t-û]-kântû-kû 5m-dôg = nê]]

c1.SUBJ-met NPERS finish cook c5.AG-ASSOC C6A-sweet.potato C6B-heat = with

‘He met (them having) finished cooking of sweet potatoes with heat.’

**Na ye' wa to, wa ñ men-ty ṭut-re...**

003

[IMPERSONAL DITRANS PRED (Ch 4)]

[ADV.TIME[LOCATIVE PRED NOMINAL (Ch 5)]]

[nâ = jê = wâ = tû]

[wâ - è = mên t-ô = t-re]

INDEF.SUBJ-give-c1.OBJ-c6.OBJ C1.SUBJ = COP = stomach c6.AG-ASSOC = c6-eat

‘He was given them, (and when) he is in the middle of eating...

**...ra-my dogrs wa u-nu.**

004

[DITRANS PRED (Ch 4)]

[râ-ô ñô=[wá ñû-nû]

fire-c3 burn-REP = c1.OBJ C3-mouth

‘fire burns him (on the) mouth’

**Wa sůk m-is, rap rap rap.**

005

[TRANS PRED (Ch 4)]

[wâ-sôk 5m-îis] râp râp râp râp

c1.SUBJ = put c6B-eye IDEO IDEO IDEO IDEO

‘He started to cry, drip, drip, drip’
Na zyu yan-ə wa ətte əs-kan.

007

[IMPERSONAL ‘SAY’ MATRIX [ ‘WHAT’ QUESTION [ POSSESSIVE PRED (Ch 5)]]

[nā = zə [jān-ə [w = əʃ-tə = əs-kān]]]

INDEF.SUBJ = say what-c3 C1.SUBJ = COP-PFT = C4-crying

‘Someone asked, “Why are you crying?” ’ (lit: “what is he have crying?”)

Wa zyu baksyn baksyn mar-əm Yəso nm y dm u-kan.

008a

[‘SAY’ MATRIX [V-DIST V-DIST ...]

[wā = zə [b∧ks-ən b∧ks-ən]]

C1.SUBJ = say remember-DIST remember-DIST

‘ He said (he was) remembering long ago

008a

[REL.CL [TRANS ‘DO’ ]]]

[mārə-m [jəʃɔŋ-ɔŋ nɔm mārә = dɔm ə-kān ]]

death-c6b.REL PN-C3.SUBJ do death LOC = top C3-cross

‘death that Jesus did die on the cross’

Q wa wa əs-kan.

009

[DITRANS PRED (Ch 4) ]

[ʃ ŵā = wā əs-kān ]

C3.SUBJ put = C1.OBJ C4-cry

‘That made him cry.’
APPENDIX E

SAMPLE TEXT C - YOUNG MAN (YM_IY_ROR_2013)

Introduction to text: Young Man

This text is about the plight of a young man who wants to get married. He is handsome and likable, but he has no money so none of his other qualities matter. In the end he is discouraged and told to make way for another man with the necessary means to make a good husband.

Orthographic transcription: Young Man


Translation: Young Man

There was a certain young man in a certain village. He was handsome, but he didn’t have any money. Because he didn’t have any money, when he went wanting marriage, he was told he would not be given marriage. God gave him a beautiful face, but he didn’t have any money. He went to a certain town wanting marriage. A girl liked him; also her parents liked (him). Because he didn’t have any money, he was told he would not be given marriage. Then, he was told, he should make room for those with money.
Interlinearized text: Young Man

The text is presented in units of six lines with an optional seventh line as described for Sample text A in Appendix C.

Na nong wakyn zwar wa y okon taas q.

001 002
[PRESIDENTIONAL ‘DO’ (CH 10) ]
[nā nāg wā-kōn zwār=wā ‘=d-kōn tās=] INDEF.SUBJ do.PST C1-there young.man=C1 LOC C3-there village C3
‘There was a certain young man in a certain village.’
(lit: ‘They did a certain young man in a certain town.’)

Wa q sq-yə, watsē shik da.

003 004
[PREDICATE ADJECTIVE (CH 6)] [NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRED (CH 6)]
[wā =ʔ sā-fā] [wā rá-te] fi k =dā]
C1.SUBJ = COP good-C7 C1.SUBJ NEG.COP-PFT money = NEG
‘He is handsome, (but) he does not have any money.’

Remu ʒu watsē shik da,

005
[Adv. REASON [NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRED (CH 6) ]]
[rem=s= wā rá-te] fi k =dā]
word = say-C1.SUBJ NEG.COP-PFT money = NEG
‘And because he does not have any money,

a wa dēg ʒu ssə ʒr-gy,

006
[ADV.TIME [INTRANS PRED (CH 5) [NOMINALIZED PURPOSE (CH 4)])]
[d =wā dēg] [sā =d=t-ʒ ]]
COND C1 go want-ASSOC C5-marriage
‘when he goes wanting marriage,’
na zu na da nya-du wa yr-gu da.

007

[IMPERSONAL ‘SAY’ MATRIX [IMPERSONAL NEG DITRANS PRED (Ch 5) ] ]

\[ nā = zō \quad nā = d = njá \quad d-ō = wā \quad r-gō = dā \] 

INDEF.SUBJ = say INDEF = NEG = give C5-ASSOC = C1.OBJ C5-marriage = NEG

‘Someone said, “He will not be given marriage.” ’

Ru-ṣa yaag wa zwar-du u-shu,

008

[DITRANS PRED (Ch 5) ]

\[ rō-bā = njā-g = wā \quad zwār = d-`-u-βō \] 

god-C3.SUBJ give-PST = C1.OBJ beauty = AG5-ASSOC-C3-face

‘God gave him beauty of face,’

amma wa zatte shik da.

009

[NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRED (Ch 6) ]

\[ ām = wā \quad rā-te = ŋik = dā \] 

but-C1.FOC NEG.COP-PFT money = NEG

‘but he does not have any money.’

Wa de'c u okon bu-o us-sa yr-gu.

010

[INTRANS PREDICATION (Ch 5) ]

\[ wā = debow \quad 3kēn = bū = ̄ \] 

c1.SUBJ = travel LOC = C3.certain compound = C3 C4-want = FACE = C5-marriage

‘He went to a certain family wanting marriage.’

Gwup ọssa-u wa; I mate ne ọssa.

011 012

[POSSESSIVE PRED (Ch 6)]

\[ gwōp = s-sa = wā \] 

girl PROG = C4-want = C1.OBJ C2 = with bore = with PROG = C4-want

‘Girl wants him; the parents (those together who bore) want (him).’
remu zu wa zatte shik da

013
[ADV. REASON [NEGATIVE POSSESSIVE PRED (Ch 6) ]]
[rém = ṣ = z  [ wā  dāttē  fik = da]]
because = ASSOC = saying  C1.SBJ NEG.HAVE money = NEG
‘(But) because he does not have money,’

na zu na da yady wa ýr-gy da

014
[IMPERSONAL ‘SAY’ MATRIX [IMPERSONAL NEG DITRANS PRED (Ch 5) ]]
[nā zē n = dá = :  d-ṣ = wā = r  gē = da]
NSPEC = say  NSPEC = NEG = give  C5-ASSOC = C1.OBJ = C5 marriage = NEG
‘Someone said, “He will not be given marriage.”’

da na zu wa hatē wa ya a shik ne ýr-be

015 016
[Adv. Time [IMPERSONAL ‘SAY’ MATRIX [JUXT INTRANS PREDICATION (Ch 5)] ]]
[dā  [ nā zē  [ wā = hā-tē-ː  wā = jā  ḍ = fik = nē  ṣr-bē]]]
time NSPEC = say  C1.SBJ = go-PFT-DEP  C1.SBJ = give  C2 = money = with  C5-place
‘Then they said, he (should) go, he (should) give those with money a place.’
APPENDIX F

CATALOGUE OF ASSOCIATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS:

FORM AND FUNCTION

This appendix contains an inventory of Associative Constructions (ASSOCCxNs) with a broad range of functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function of modifier</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(part)whole</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kéŋ = j-ð = r-swà</td>
<td>‘bridge of nose’</td>
<td>lit: ‘frontier of nose’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zwàr = d-` = u-ʃţî</td>
<td>‘beauty of face’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swà = d-` = u-rwág</td>
<td>‘elephant’s trunk’</td>
<td>lit: ‘nose of elephant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mén  t-ð = r-kářr</td>
<td>‘middle of basket’</td>
<td>lit: ‘stomachs of basket’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>měn = t-ð = m  bʊ</td>
<td>‘middle of water’</td>
<td>lit: ‘stomachs of water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bé = d-ð     kóɔr-št = tš;</td>
<td>‘place of those baskets’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place = AG5-ASSOC basket-c6 = c6.DEF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɪm = t-ð   nó</td>
<td>‘names of birds’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rém = d-ð   á-s-ʊs</td>
<td>‘language of the Us people’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwʃk = ð = r  gë</td>
<td>‘eggshell’</td>
<td>lit: ‘shell of egg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwʃk = t-ð = t  gë</td>
<td>‘eggshells’</td>
<td>lit: ‘shells of eggs’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɔk = ð = r-îs</td>
<td>‘eyebrow’</td>
<td>lit: ‘calabash of eye’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɔk = t-ð = r-îs</td>
<td>‘eyebrows’</td>
<td>lit: ‘calabashes of eye’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃáp = ð = r-îs</td>
<td>‘eyelash’</td>
<td>lit: ‘feather of eye’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃáp = t-ð = r-îs</td>
<td>‘eyelashes’</td>
<td>lit: ‘feathers of eye’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of modifier</td>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Gloss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kéŋ = j-ð = t-swà</td>
<td>‘bridge of noses’</td>
<td>lit: ‘frontier of noses’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>họ = j-ð = r-nò</td>
<td>‘anus’</td>
<td>lit: ‘hole of buttock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>họ = s-ð = r-nò</td>
<td>‘anuses’</td>
<td>lit: ‘holes of buttocks’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>họ = j-ð = r-rète</td>
<td>‘clitoris’</td>
<td>lit: ‘hole of vagina’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>họ = s-ð = r-rète</td>
<td>‘clitoris’</td>
<td>lit: ‘holes of vagina’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sóʔ = ` = u-kôp</td>
<td>‘armpit’</td>
<td>lit: ‘cave of shoulder’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sóʔ = ð = t-kôp</td>
<td>‘armpits’</td>
<td>lit: ‘cave of shoulders’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḏọ = j-` = u-kifimì</td>
<td>‘thumb’</td>
<td>lit: ‘finger of decrepit old man’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ís = d-` = u-ná</td>
<td>‘ankle’</td>
<td>lit: ‘eye of leg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ís = t-` = u-ná</td>
<td>‘ankles’</td>
<td>lit: ‘eyes of leg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bá = d-` = u-ná</td>
<td>‘foot’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bag? of leg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bá = t-ð = s-ná</td>
<td>‘feet’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bags? of legs’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kǹk = d-ð = r-hí</td>
<td>‘skull’</td>
<td>lit: ‘calabash of head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kǹk = t-ð = r-hí</td>
<td>‘skulls’</td>
<td>lit: ‘calabashes of head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jār = ` = u-fìn</td>
<td>‘spine’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bone of back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jār = s-` = u-fìn</td>
<td>‘spines’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bones of back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jār = j-` = u-gás</td>
<td>‘rib’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bone of side(of body)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jār = s-` = u-gás</td>
<td>‘ribs’</td>
<td>lit: ‘bones of side (of body)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of modifier</td>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Gloss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hí = d- ` = u - zūr</td>
<td>'head of lion'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jàn ̀ = r-rwāb</td>
<td>'bed made of clay'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēn = d-̀ = m-dāp</td>
<td>'trap made of sap'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēn = t-̀ = m-dāp</td>
<td>'traps of sap'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jà = d-̀ = r-tjāmpā</td>
<td>'boy'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jà = t-̀ = t-tjāmpā</td>
<td>lit: 'offspring of male'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jà = d-̀ = r-nētā</td>
<td>'girl' lit: 'offspring of female'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jà = t-̀ = t-nētā</td>
<td>'girls' lit: 'offspring (pl) of women'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dū = d-̀ = m-bō</td>
<td>'well of water'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = j-̀ = m-hjā</td>
<td>'vein'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = s-̀ = m-hjā</td>
<td>lit: 'road of blood'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = j-̀ = m-bō</td>
<td>'veins'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = s-̀ = m-bō</td>
<td>lit: 'roads of blood'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = j-̀ = m-bō</td>
<td>'spring'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fōn = s-̀ = m-bō</td>
<td>lit: 'road of water'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = m-jā̀x</td>
<td>'sick'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = rēs = d-̀ = dʒāb</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of health'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hūrè</td>
<td>'impatient' lit:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hūrè</td>
<td>'lack of keeping heart'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hūrè</td>
<td>'restlessness'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hūrè</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of resting'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ hāg = d-̀ = t-tō</td>
<td>'stubbornness'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ hāg = d-̀ = t-tō</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of hearing of ears'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = jīk ̀ = u - nēm</td>
<td>'lack of money thing'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = m-nō?</td>
<td>'lightweight'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = m-nō?</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of weight'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = m-ràng</td>
<td>'rough'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = m-ràng</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of smoothness'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hí</td>
<td>'stupid'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kōb = d-̀ = r-hí</td>
<td>lit: 'lack of head'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nētā = j-̀ = u - ?ībō</td>
<td>'Igbo woman' lit: woman of Igbo-land'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of modifier</td>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Gloss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place of origin/source</td>
<td>já = d-` = u-mús</td>
<td>‘kitten’ lit: ‘offspring of cat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>já = t-ð = mús</td>
<td>‘kittens’ lit: ‘offspring (pl) of cats’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zán = m-ð = r-hɔ́</td>
<td>‘sunshine’ lit: ‘light of sun’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zání = m-` = u-pjá:t</td>
<td>‘moonlight’ lit: ‘light of moon’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>já = t-ð = s-te = tő</td>
<td>‘kittens’ lit: ‘offspring (pl) of cats’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fruit = AG6-ASSOC = C4-tree = C6.DEF</td>
<td>‘those fruits of trees’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place of use</td>
<td>nór = d-ð = r-hí</td>
<td>‘hat’ lit: ‘thing of head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kwá = j-` = u-ná</td>
<td>‘ankle ring, bangle’ lit: ‘bracelet of leg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kwá = s-` = u-ná</td>
<td>‘ankle rings, bangles’ lit: ‘bracelets of leg’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rè = t-ð = m-rí:</td>
<td>‘evening meal’ lit: ‘eating of darkness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time of use/activity</td>
<td>rwán = d-ð = r-hɔ́</td>
<td>‘sunrise’ lit: ‘rising of sun’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bë = t-δ = r-fšʔt</td>
<td>‘places of sitting’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
<td>kóm = δ = t- tjwàʔ</td>
<td>‘right hand’ lit: ‘hand of soup’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kwàt = j-δ = t kwó:m</td>
<td>‘ring of wealth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bò = m-ð = t-út</td>
<td>‘old water’ lit: ‘water of old’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property</td>
<td>dà = δ = m-tɔ́r</td>
<td>‘cold weather’ lit: ‘time of coldness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fãr s-ð = m wór</td>
<td>‘tall shea-butter trees’ lit: ‘shea-butter trees of length’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swér = d-ð = m-hɔ́k</td>
<td>‘widening’ lit: ‘lengthening of largeness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kɔːr = d-` = u-tɔ́tɔ́rsɛ̀</td>
<td>‘third basket’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinal number</td>
<td>kán = s-ð = ká:t</td>
<td>‘dawn’ lit: ‘crying of chickens/roosters’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idiomatic</td>
<td>bò = m-ð = t-rân</td>
<td>‘green’ lit: ‘water of leaves’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bò = m-` = u-dàk</td>
<td>‘brown’ lit: ‘water of ground’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|            | kɔb = δ = wàʔ | ‘orphan’ lit: ‘lack of child’ (cannot mean ‘childless adult’)

266
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function of modifier</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|                      | kɔ̀b = ð = jáːg | ‘orphans’
|                      |              | lit: ‘lack of children’ (can not mean ‘childless adult’)             |
|                      | jà = d-ð = m-zàn | ‘bastard, illegitimate child’
|                      |              | lit: ‘offspring of emptiness’                                        |
|                      | jáːg = ð = m-zàn | ‘bastards, illegitimate children’
|                      |              | lit: ‘offspring (pl) of emptiness’                                   |
REFERENCES CITED


Heath, David and The ūt-Ma’in Language Development Project. 2005. Grammatical Sketch of the ūt-Ma’in (Fakai) Language. ms


269


Keating, Christy. 2003. Phonological Sketch of the ūt-Ma'in (Fakai) Language. ms.


